BELL'S ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS

AESAR BOOK VI

J. T. PHILLIPSON M.A.

BELL'S ILLUSTRATED CLASSICAL SERIES

EDITED BY E. C. MARCHANT, M.A.

Classical Master at St. Paul's School

CAESAR: DE BELLO GALLICO

BOOK VI



A Baggage Train. (From reliefs on the Arch of Constantine and the Column of Marcus Aurelius.)

G. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER SEXTUS

EDITED

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

BY

J. T. PHILLIPSON, M.A.
HEADMASTER OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, FINCHLEY

LONDON: GEORGE BELL & SONS
YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN

1900

BELL'S ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS.

These volumes are issued in three forms—

1. With Notes and Vocabulary complete, 1s. 6*d.*

2. Without Vocabulary, 1s. 6*d.*

3. With Vocabulary, but Without Notes, 1s.

OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PREFACE

The present edition of Caesar's Sixth Book is designed to meet the requirements of Candidates for the Junior Local Examinations. The Introduction has been limited to what seems likely to serve this purpose. The Notes will be found throughout to be explanatory rather than critical. In many cases simple explanations of constructions have been added to the note for general reference. My experience is that boys readily understand these explanations at the time they are given, especially if they are placed on the blackboard; but, unless they also have them ready to hand, the outline quickly loses its sharpness.

I have added some exercises on the text, and also a short list of military phrases found in Book VI, which it is hoped will prove useful.

I have to acknowledge my indebtedness to many of the recent editions of this book, and also to Mr. Froude's *Caesar* and Mr. Roby's *Latin Grammar*.

J. T. PHILLIPSON.

Christ's College, Finchley,
Dec. 1899.

CONTENTS

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

INTRODUCTION

Caesar.

GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR was born on July 12, B. C. 100[1]. He was nephew to the great Marius, who in the two previous years had saved Italy from the hordes of barbarian invaders which were threatening her from the north. Caesar received the education suited to a young man of position. He married, when barely seventeen, Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the leading men in Rome.

The great city was at this period struggling to throw off a coat that had become too small. The institutions, which had been admirable when she was a mere township of central Italy, were altogether unfitted for the mistress of the Mediterranean. The wide extension of her dominion made it no longer possible for the citizens to give their votes on each matter of public importance. The vast increase of wealth, and the superior attractions of the city to the simple hardiness of country life, made these same citizens disinclined to fight their country's battles. The direction of affairs had passed into the hands of the wealthy few, who secured office by lavish

[1] The most probable date. (Some give 102 B.C.)

bribery of the city mob, the unworthy successors of the old citizen-soldiers. The Senate, which once had been 'an assembly of kings,' was not ashamed to accept presents from the enemies of their country; and was alternately arrogant or cringing, according as fortune smiled or frowned upon them. The army was all-powerful, and if a general could secure the esteem of his troops, he could rule Rome and 'the world' with an absolute control. Religion was all but dead, the only god that was truly worshipped was the god of wealth.

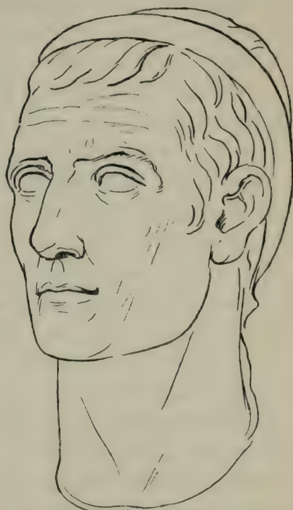
There had always been in Rome a sharp distinction of classes. In her early life the conflict was between the privileged and the non-privileged. The haughty and exclusive *Patrician* grudged every concession to the clamorous *Plebeian*. But at the period with which we are concerned this condition of affairs had almost entirely given way to a new distinction, the distinction of wealth. The *Optimates* included, speaking generally, the aristocracy and the wealth of Rome; the *Populares* was the party of reform. These two hated each other with a deadly hatred, and only united in their determination to oppress the unfortunate peoples whom fate had delivered into their hands.

Caesar's sympathies and the traditions of his family alike inclined him to side with the people, and thereby he early incurred the suspicion and ill-will of the Senate, in other words, of the Optimates. He held the usual offices. In B.C. 86 he was made priest of Jupiter; in 68, Quaestor[1]; in 65, Aedile[2]; in 63, Pontifex Maxi-

[1] The Quaestors collected the taxes, customs, &c., due to the state, and also paid all state expenses. They were, in fact, the treasury officials.

[2] The Aediles had the care of the streets and public buildings in Rome. They had to watch over the markets, provide

mus[1]; in 62, Praetor[2]. He served with distinction in the storming of Mytilene, and against the pirates, the scourge of the Mediterranean; he completed the conquest of Spain in B. C. 61. In B. C. 60 he was chosen Consul[3] for the following year.



G. IULIUS CAESAR. (From a bust in the Louvre.)

He was now one of the foremost men in Rome, and in conjunction with the wealthy Crassus and the famous Pompey, the conqueror of Asia Minor, he formed the celebrated First Triumvirate. On the expiration of his year of office he assumed, as pro-consul, the governorship of Gallia Cis-Alpina (the valley of the Po), Gallia Narbonensis (the southern portion of what is now France) and Illyricum. The disturbed state of the country

against fire, and were responsible for order. They also organized the public games.

[1] The head of the priestly colleges and of all religious matters.

[2] The Praetors corresponded to our judges, but with the difference that they only held office for a year and were not necessarily trained jurists.

[3] Two Consuls were elected annually. For that period they were head of the government, both civil and military. They presided in the Senate, and commanded in the field (though in Caesar's time the latter function was filled by a pro-consul, the consul having too much to do at home).

to the north of Gallia Narbonensis (usually called the Province) kept him busily occupied from B.C. 58–51, and involved him in a series of brilliant campaigns which have caused posterity to regard him as one of the greatest generals the world has ever seen. But he found time each winter to visit his provinces for the purpose of holding assizes, &c., and also for watching affairs at Rome from a nearer distance.

Meanwhile, his enemies in 'the City' were loud in their demand for his recall. They feared the determined soldier and his devoted legions. They recollected the awful massacres that attended the return of Marius and of Sulla (though the latter directed his vengeance against their foes, the people). Pompey was estranged from Caesar, and the conqueror of Gaul was bidden disband his army before his term of office expired.

Skilfully putting his opponents in the wrong, Caesar crossed the Rubicon, in 49 B.C., and advanced on Rome. Pompey fled to Greece, whither he was followed by Caesar, after a short and brilliant campaign in Spain. After a reverse, Caesar utterly routed the aristocratic party at Pharsalus, in 48. In quick succession he subdued Egypt (to which country Pompey had fled, only to die), Asia Minor (*veni*, *vidi*, *vici*), Africa (battle of Thapsus, 46), and Spain (battle of Munda, 45), in all of which countries there were partisans of the aristocrats.

In the five short months that remained to him of life, Caesar continued the work, which he had begun five years before, of giving Rome a new constitution. But his stern suppression of abuses, and his unbounded power, made him many enemies. To the Roman the very word *rex* was odious, and there were not wanting men who said that he aimed at sovereignty. He had, moreover, committed the unpardonable offence of pardoning those who

had been his enemies. A plot was formed, and on March 15, B. C. 44, a band of those whom he had loaded with favours stabbed him to death in the Senate House.

Gaul.

Gaul, in Caesar's day, comprised what we now call France, but on the eastern border it extended to the lake of Geneva and the left bank of the Rhine. The strip of country along the shores of the Mediterranean belonged to Rome, and extended to the Cevennes, including the basin of the Rhone as far north as Lyons and the lake of Geneva. To the west lay Aquitania, which met the Province at Toulouse. In the far north lived the Belgae. Between them dwelt those who (to use Caesar's own words) 'are called Celts in their own tongue, Gauls in ours.' The river Garonne separated them from Aquitania, the Marne and the Seine from the Belgae.

While the Aquitani and Belgae were still little better than savages, the Gauls proper had reached a considerable degree of civilization, owing, in a measure, to their intercourse with the Province. They had roads, bridges, farms, towns; they had amassed wealth; they had a well-developed feudal system, of a kind, and a powerful priesthood. The common people were no better than serfs, and were under the absolute control of the nobles. The nobles rendered obedience to the chief. In return, the chief and the nobles were bound to protect their dependents.

The priests, or Druids, were a separate caste, drawn from the higher ranks. They were the ministers of religion and the dispensers of justice. The education of the young was entrusted to them. The Gauls claimed descent from the god of darkness, and reckoned their

time by nights instead of days (as we say, a fortnight). They offered human sacrifices, as being most pleasing to their gods,—criminals, if they were to be had —if not, innocent persons.

Germany.

The Germans were a different race from the Gauls. They were far behind them in civilization. Their whole life was spent in hunting and warfare. They despised agriculture, and lived chiefly on flesh, milk, and cheese. They set great value on hardiness, fortitude, cleanliness, and morality, but disliked the idea of wealth, and refused to settle down and acquire landed property. They had no priestly caste to work on their superstitious feelings, and they worshipped only such obvious benefactors as the sun, the moon, and fire. Their country was bounded on the west by the Rhine, and extended indefinitely eastward—a confused patchwork of morass and mountain, forest and grazing land.

The Germans had long cast covetous eyes upon the fair valleys of 'la belle France,' as it is now most justly called. Already two enormous hordes had penetrated as far from their homes as Marseilles and Milan, and had been met and destroyed (B.C. 102, 101) by Marius. Other bands had crossed the Rhine and settled for a time on its western bank. One section, under Ariovistus, had actually been invited into Gaul by the Sequani to aid them against their rivals, the Aedui; and, like the Angles and Saxons 500 years later, they resolved to remain. The Helvetii, a Celtic tribe of mountaineers, inhabiting what is now western Switzerland, were seized with the same roving impulse; and it was this danger that confronted Caesar at the very beginning of his pro-consulship.

Caesar's Campaigns.

B. C. 58. Caesar refused the Helvetii permission to pass through the Province by way of the lake of Geneva (Lemannus Lacus). Thereupon they took a more northerly route, crossed the Arar (*Saône*) and ravaged the country of the Aedui, allies of Rome. Caesar pursued them, brought them to action near Bibracte (*Autun*), utterly defeated them, and sent them back to their country, treating the survivors with much kindness. He then turned his attention to Ariovistus, routed his Germans between the Vosges and the Rhine near Colmar, and drove them across the Rhine.

B. C. 57. Alarmed by Caesar's successes, the Belgae roused themselves to attack him. He advanced rapidly to Rheims (Durocortorum), thence he crossed the Axona (*Aisne*) and inflicted a crushing blow which laid the whole district at his feet. He then turned north to subdue the hardy and defiant Nervii, who as he heard had joined forces with the Aduatuci, a pure German tribe. On the left bank of the Sabis (*Sambre*), near the future battle-field of Malplaquet, the Roman army was suddenly attacked when on the march, and for a time was in the greatest danger. In the end, however, the forces of the Nervii were almost exterminated.

B. C. 56. The tribes of Brittany (Armorica) made their submission during the winter, with the exception of the Veneti, an industrious seafaring people who lived along the jagged sea coast between Ushant and the estuary of the Loire. To subdue them Caesar built a fleet, and defeated them on their own element. Meanwhile, Publius Crassus reduced Aquitania.

B. C. 55. Hearing that the Suevi, a powerful section of the German race, whose home was the modern Baden and Wurtemburg, were crossing the Rhine on the invitation of the Belgae, Caesar hastened through the Ardennes to the Mosa (*Meuse*), and destroyed them utterly. He then crossed the Rhine by a bridge which he built at Bonn, and remained a short time in Germany to overawe the inhabitants. As he had some weeks of summer weather left, he determined to make a descent on Britain, the headquarters of Druidism, where many Gauls had found refuge and help. He crossed with two legions and landed not far from Deal. After one or two slight engagements with the natives he returned.

B. C. 54. A second expedition on a larger scale was made into Britain, when the Romans penetrated as far as St. Albans. Returning to Gaul late in September, Caesar disposed his legions for the winter at considerable distances from each other. This arrangement, contrary to his practice, was rendered necessary by a bad harvest. The result was disastrous. His prolonged absence, and the scattered condition of the army, incited the Belgian peoples to make a desperate bid for freedom. The Eburōnes suddenly attacked the division stationed under Sabinus and Cotta in their midst at Aduatuca. Sabinus foolishly allowed himself to be enticed out of the camp and his troops were cut to pieces. The movement spread, and the camp under Q. Cicero was attacked. But Caesar hastened to its relief, and the rising subsided for the time.

B. C. 53 (the subject of Book VI). The insurrection seemed so formidable that Caesar raised two fresh legions and borrowed a third from Italy during the winter. He began by raiding the Nervii; then, turning SW., he nipped in the bud a rising of the Senŏnes and Carnutes;

and thus cleared the way for a campaign against Ambĭorix. He reduced the Menăpii in the extreme NE., while Labiēnus defeated the Trevĕri in the Moselle valley.

He next threw a bridge across the Rhine just below Coblentz, and made a demonstration against the German tribes known by the generic name of Suevi or Suebi. As the natives retired on his approach into the safety of their forests (the Hercynia silva), Caesar returned into Gaul, breaking down the bridge on the German side, and leaving a detachment to guard the western end.

He then turned his attention to the capture of Ambiorix. He established the fourteenth legion under Cicero at Aduatuca (*Tongres*) with the heavy baggage, and sent Labienus with three legions to harry the coast tribes, Trebonius with an equal force to waste the neighbourhood, while he himself followed Ambiorix, promising to return in a week.

After a fruitless pursuit, he returned to find that Cicerŏ had been hard pressed. On the seventh day he had, contrary to orders, sent a part of his force some distance from camp to collect supplies. It so happened that the Sugambri, a German tribe, were out on the 'war-path.' They had attacked the foraging party and had almost forced an entrance into the camp.

The account of this year's campaigns closes with an investigation into the rising among the Senŏnes and Carnutes, held at Durocortŏrum (*Rheims*).

B. C. 52. The Gauls made a final effort to throw off the yoke of Rome. Under Vercingetorix an almost universal rising taxed Caesar's abilities to the utmost. This chieftain was a man of genius and enlightenment, and an ardent patriot. He saw that it was hopeless for his countrymen to meet the trained legions of Rome in a pitched battle. He therefore advocated a system of

guerilla warfare, the cutting off of supplies, the intercepting of commissariat columns, the harassment of detached bodies of troops.

Caesar besieged and took Avaricum (*Bourges*), in spite of desperate efforts to relieve it. He then marched into Auvergne, and laid siege to Gergovia (near *Clermont*); but this town he proved unable to take—almost his only failure. Abandoning the attempt, Caesar invested Alesia (*Alise*, near *Dijon*), into which Vercingetorix had thrown himself. The besieging army was itself besieged by a large force which had advanced to the relief of the city. But Caesar beat his assailants off, and Vercingetorix surrendered, to be executed at Rome five years later.

B.C. 51. The Carnutes and Bituriges were still defiant. Caesar swooped down upon them in January, and compelled the submission of the Bituriges, then turning his attention to the Carnutes and Bellovaci, who were planning a raid on the Remi, the unswerving allies of Rome. Commius, who in B.C. 53 had been in Caesar's service (chap. vi), was the leader of the movement. Caesar defeated the tribes in a pitched battle, and then crushed the last remnants of resistance by the capture of Uxellodunum.

Judging him from the standard of his time, Caesar was a most merciful conqueror. If clemency was possible, clemency was shown. Only to treachery did Caesar show himself severe. He won the entire confidence of the Gauls, who settled down to a peaceful existence at the close of the campaigns and remained loyal to Rome, 'personally devoted to their conqueror, contented with their condition, and resolved to maintain the peace which was now established—a unique experience in political history[1].' We may well believe that Vergil had

[1] Froude, *Caesar*, chap. xix. *ad fin.*

Caesar's work in his mind when, twenty-five years later, he wrote—

> Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento;
> Hae tibi erunt artes; pacisque imponere morem,
> Parcere subiectis, et debellare superbos [1].

> 'But, Roman, thou, do thou control
> The nations far and wide:
> Be this thy genius, to impose
> The rule of peace on vanquished foes,
> Show pity to the humbled soul,
> And crush the sons of pride [2].'

The Army.

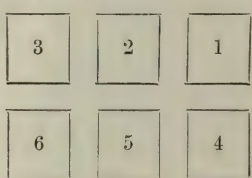
The army had undergone great changes since the days of the kings and the early republic. Originally it consisted of citizen-soldiers, who left their various occupations to serve in a campaign, and returned at its termination to their ordinary pursuits. Their duties and equipment were arranged according to their wealth; thus, the richest class furnished the cavalry, the most expensive arm, while the poorest appear to have had nothing more than a spear, sword, or sling.

With the growth of the republic this arrangement proved unworkable, and about the time of the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones, Marius thoroughly reorganized the army. He abolished the levy from citizens according to their property qualification, and enlisted any one who wished, without distinction of class. This rearrangement may be looked upon as one of the heaviest blows struck, unconsciously, at the moribund republic. Fighting now became a profession. The needy, the shiftless, found in the army a congenial occupation and

[1] *Aeneid*, vi. 851–3. [2] Conington.

a home where there were no distinctions of birth or race, where willing obedience was all that was asked, where good conduct and bravery were the certain passports to respect and promotion. To the soldier of Caesar's day the army was all in all, his general was his guiding star. When the control of the army passes out of the hand of the nation, and becomes the instrument of an individual, that nation's days are numbered. Within one hundred years of Caesar's campaigns we find the troops proclaiming as emperor whom they would; the army was no longer the instrument of the individual, the individual was the instrument of the army.

The Legion. From the earliest times the troops were enrolled in regiments, or rather in brigades, called *legions*, which arrangement Marius retained. The strength of the legion, originally 4,200 men, was raised by Marius to a nominal 6,000 men, though it seems to have usually been considerably below full strength. Each legion contained ten cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort three maniples (*manipuli*), each maniple two centuries (*centuriae*). Thus there were thirty maniples and sixty centuries. The century nominally consisted of 100 men, but its actual strength was as a rule from fifty to sixty men. The cohort was arranged thus—



Each square represents a century. The three pairs, 1 and 4, 2 and 5, 3 and 6, formed the three maniples.

The cohorts were usually drawn up in the following formation (*acies triplex*) :—

4		3		2		1
	7		6		5	
10			9			8

When in action either (1) the first line hurled its javelins and then charged with the sword : if this was not effectual, the second line advanced through the intervals between the four front-rank cohorts, and repeated the manœuvre, while the rear line was held in reserve ; or (2) the second line closed up in the intervals of the first, thus presenting an unbroken front (*conferta acies*).

The front centuries (*priores*) ranked above the rear (*posteriores*). Of the cohorts, No. 10 may be called the junior, No. 1 the senior cohort.

The officers were—

(*a*) *Imperator*, the commander-in-chief. He was entrusted by the Senate with *imperium* (cp. chap. i), and the number of his legions was fixed by that body. He was responsible for all that his subordinates did, and they had to yield him absolute obedience.

(*b*) *Legati*, commanders, staff-officers, lieutenants. They were appointed by the Senate, and, under Caesar, each was, on occasion, in supreme command of a single legion.

(*c*) *Quaestores*, the paymasters, who attended to all the financial matters connected with the legion. They sometimes commanded a legion.

(*d*) *Tribuni militares* or *militum*. Six were appointed to each legion, and at one time commanded the legion in rotation, each for a period of two months. They had formerly been chosen by the people. In Caesar's time they seem to have owed their appointment rather

to family influence than to military capacity; consequently the office became insignificant. Their precise duties, relatively to those of the *legati*, cannot be stated certainly. Possibly the *tribuni militum* commanded the legion as a body of human beings requiring care, kindness, and firm handling; while the *legatus*' first duty was to treat it as a fighting machine.

(*e*) *Praefecti militum* were similar to the *tribuni militum*, but were in command of auxiliary troops.

(*f*) The *Centurio*, centurion (sometimes called *ordo*). Each legion contained sixty, one for each *centuria*. Their duties were a combination of those of the British sergeant, lieutenant, adjutant, and captain. They had to drill the soldiers, inspect their arms, food, and clothing, see that their duties were efficiently performed, and enforce good conduct. The junior centurion commanded the rear century (*centuria posterior*) of the left-hand maniple of the rear left-hand cohort (No. 10). He was promoted to the same position in cohort No. 9, and so on till he reached cohort No. 1. He was then in command of the fifty-first century. The next step was the command of the *front* century (*centuria prior*) of the left-hand maniple of cohort No. 10. He passed through the cohorts in command of their corresponding maniples until he again reached No. 1. Then, beginning with the middle rear century, the middle front century, the right rear, and the right front centuries, he gradually passed through the successive cohorts—six times in all—until he reached the coveted post of senior centurion, who was called *primus pilus, primipilus*, or *primi pili centurio.*

Additional Troops. Besides the rank and file proper, each legion had attached to it an engineer corps (*fabri*) whose officer was called *praefectus fabrûm*; auxiliary

troops (*auxiliares*, *auxilia* or *alarii*, as they fought on the flanks, *alae*) furnished by allies or dependent states, including slingers (*funditores*), archers (*sagittarii*), javelin men (*iaculatores*).

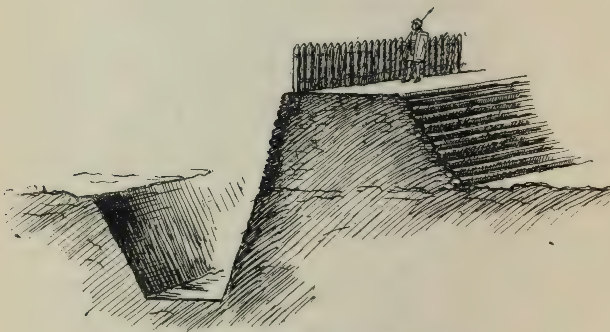
Arms and Equipment. The legionary soldiers were armed with a helmet (*găl̆ea*), breast-plate (*lōrīca*), greaves (*ocreae*), shield (*scutum*), and as weapons they carried a short two-edged sword (*glădĭus*), and two long javelins (*pīlum*). In addition each man carried corn for a fortnight, cooking vessels, a saw, hatchet, spade, and a few stakes (*valli*) for entrenching. The legionary thus loaded was, not without reason, said to be *impedītus*. When he had put down everything except his arms he was *expedītus* The heavier baggage (*impedīmenta*) was conveyed in the baggage train.

The Standards. The standard of the legion was the *aquila* (eagle); those of the cohorts were *signa*. The standard-bearers were known respectively as *aquilifer* and *signifer*. The post was one of honour, and was assigned to men whose bravery had been conspicuous. The *vexillum* seems to have been the standard of auxiliary or specially enrolled companies, known as *vexillarii* (cp. chap. xxxvi, where men discharged from hospital as fit for service were enrolled *sub vexillo*). Such men were often *evocati*, time-expired men who preferred to remain on active service. The *vexillum* was also the name of the flag hoisted as the signal for battle (cf. Bk. II, chap. xx).

The Camp. If an army was on the march, a regular camp was formed each evening, always on exactly the same plan. Officers were sent on ahead to select the position, which was carefully marked out (*castra mētari*)

by *mētātores* with measuring rods (*dĕcempĕdae*). When the legions arrived, each was shown its own particular quarters, and each man knew exactly his position and duties, the first of which was to take his part in forming and entrenching the camp.

The camp was a square (or nearly a square), surrounded by a trench (*fossa*), and a rampart (*agger*) on the inside, which was protected by a strong palisade (*vallum*).



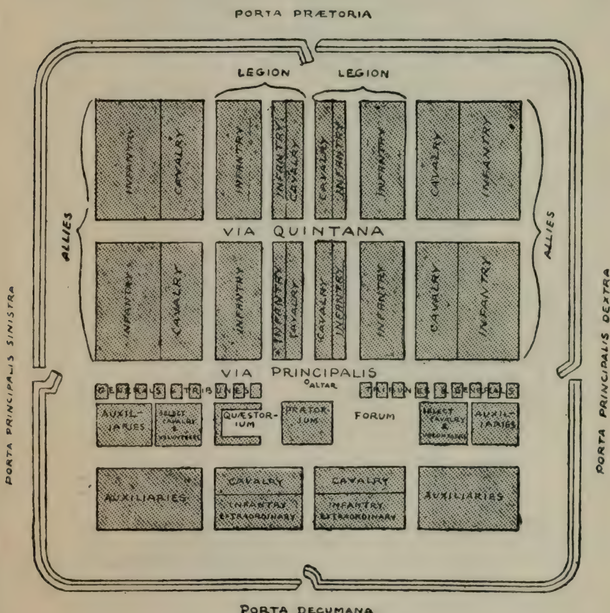
Fossa, Agger, and Vallum.

The arrangement of a Roman camp will be understood by reference to the plan on the opposite page.

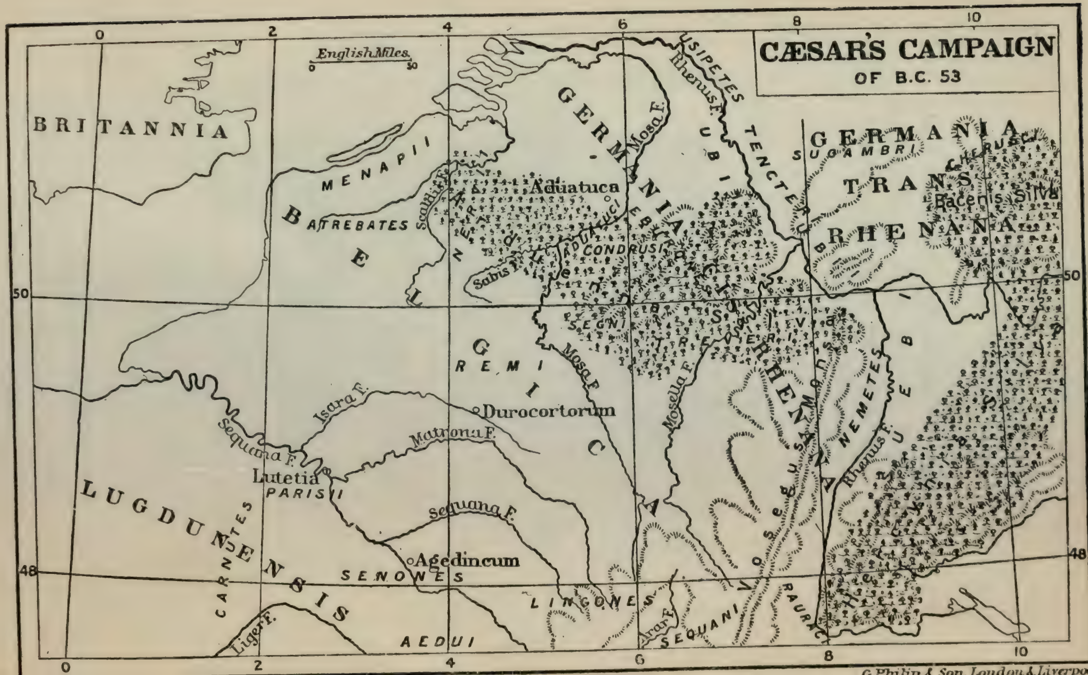
There were four gates, of which the *porta praetoria* was on the side facing the enemy, the *porta decumana* in the rear. There was an unoccupied space of 200 feet between the *agger* and the quarters of the troops, which served the double purpose of keeping the men out of range of the enemy's missiles, and of giving them room to form and manœuvre. The *praetorium*, the general's quarters, occupied a prominent position in the *via principalis*. Close to it, probably, was the *suggestus*, or raised platform

(chap. iii), from which the general addressed his men or their officers.

Sentries. *Excubiae* was the term applied to the men on sentry duty (*excubias agere*); *vigiliae* was the same, but refers to night duty only (*vigilias agere*); *stătĭo* was the post occupied in front of the gates.



Plan of a Roman Camp.


CÆSAR'S CAMPAIGN
OF B.C. 53
English Miles
BRITANNIA
MENAPII
ATREBATES
BELGICA
NERVII
Aduatuca
ADUATUCI
EBURONES
CONDRUSI
SEGNI
TREVERI
REMI
Durocortorum
Isara F.
Matrona F.
Sequana F.
Lutetia
PARISII
Agedincum
SENONES
LINGONES
AEDUI
CARNUTES
LUGDUNENSIS
Liger F.
Arar F.
SEQUANI
RAURACI
Vosegus M.
NEMETES
Rhenus F.
Mosella F.
Mosa F.
Sabis F.
Scaldis F.
GERMANIA
UBII
USIPETES
TENCTERI
SUGAMBRI
CHERUSCI
GERMANIA TRANS RHENANA
Bacenis Silva
Arduenna Silva
G. Philip & Son, London & Liverpool



Standard Bearer and Standards. (From the Museum at Bonn.)

G. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER SEXTUS

I.

Apprehending a renewal of the rising of tribes of north-east Gaul, Caesar raises fresh troops.

Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum exspectans per Marcum Silanum, Gaium Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium legatos delectum habere instituit; simul ab Gnaeo Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad Urbem cum imperio rei

publicae causa remaneret, quos ex Cisalpina Gallia consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iuberet, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans, tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore resarciri, sed etiam maioribus augeri copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeius et rei publicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos delectu, tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus, duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.

II.

The Treveri incite the Germani to take up arms. Disaffection spreads through the Belgic tribes.

Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. Cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus iure iurando inter se confirmant, obsidibusque de pecunia cavent; Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret,

Nervios, Aduatucos, Menapios adiunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germanis esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque



Roman Legionaries.

civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

III.

He falls suddenly on the Nervii. At the usual conference in the early spring, he notices the suspicious absence of deputies from the Senones and others. He promptly marches against them.

Itaque nondum hieme confecta, proximis quattuor coactis legionibus, de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto, atque ea praeda militibus concessa, vastatisque agris, in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coëgit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vere, ut instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes, Treverosque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus, civitatemque patrum memoria coniunxerant; sed ab hoc consilio afuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu pronuntiata, eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur, magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

IV.

The Senones and Carnutes are over-awed and offer submission. Caesar pardons them, but requires hostages.

Cognito eius adventu Acco, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenire. Conantibus, priusquam id effici posset,

adesse Romanos nuntiatur. Necessario sententia desistunt legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt: adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod



Types of Light-armed Soldiers. (From a relief in the Museum at Kreuznach and from Trajan's Column.)

aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis esse arbitratur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt usi deprecatoribus Remis,

quorum erant in clientela: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

V.

The campaign against the Treveri and Ambiorix, chief of the Eburones. Caesar takes steps to break up their federation with the Menapii and the Germani.

Hac parte Galliae pacata totus et mente et animo in bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci iubet, ne quis aut ex huius iracundia aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis motus exsistat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua eius consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; item per Treveros venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret, ne, desperata salute, aut se in Menapios abderet, aut cum Transrhenanis congredi cogeretur. Hoc inito consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit, duasque legiones ad eum proficisci iubet; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi, nulla coacta manu, loci praesidio freti, in silvas paludesque confugiunt, suaque eodem conferunt.

VI.

The Menapii submit to Caesar.

Caesar, partitis copiis cum Gaio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore, celeriterque effectis pontibus, adit tripertito: aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt. Ille, obsidibus acceptis, hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut eius legatos finibus suis recepissent. His confirmatis rebus, Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

VII.

Meanwhile, Labienus lures the Treveri on to attack him.

Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri, magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant; iamque ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis castris a milibus passuum quindecim, auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt. Labienus, hostium cognito consilio, sperans temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto, cum XXV cohortibus magnoque

equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur et, mille passuum intermisso spatio, castra communit. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis. Hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabat. Augebatur auxiliorum cotidie spes. Loquitur in consilio palam, quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum et postero die prima luce castra moturum. Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura cogebat. Labienus, noctu tribunis militum primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det suspicionem, maiore strepitu et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri iubet. His rebus fugae similem profectionem effecit. Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

VIII.

Rout of the Treveri.

Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli—cohortati inter se, ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent; longum esse perterritis Romanis Germanorum auxilium exspectare, neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem

atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant,—flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris placide progrediebatur. Tum, praemissis



Roman Horse-Soldier. (From Trajan's Column.)

paulum impedimentis atque in tumulo quodam collocatis,

'Habetis,' inquit, 'milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis:

praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram cernere existimate.'

Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi iubet et, paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem, quos fugere credebant, infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt, ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas silvas petiverunt. Quos Labienus equitatu consectatus, magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post diebus civitatem recepit. Nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Treverorum fuga, sese domum receperunt. Cum his propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

IX.

Caesar bridges the Rhine, and crosses into Germany. Embassy from the Ubii.

Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pon-

tem instituit. Nota atque instituta ratione, magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant, neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa neque ab se fidem laesam: petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant; si amplius obsidum vellet, dare pollicentur. Cognita Caesar causa reperit ab Suebis auxilia missa esse; Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit, aditus viasque in Suebos perquirit.

X.

The Suebi, the next tribe eastwards, retreat in alarm to the borders of an immense forest.

Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus, rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit; Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant, suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans barbaros atque imperitos homines inopia cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci; mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant, quaeque apud eos

gerantur, cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt et, paucis diebus intermissis, referunt: Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coëgissent, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine, quae appellatur Bacenis: hanc longe introrsus pertinere, et pro nativo muro obiectam Cheruscos ab Suebis Suebosque ab Cheruscis iniuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad eius initium silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse.

XI.–XXVIII.

A digression. Gaul and Germany described and compared.

XI.

Factions in Gaul.

Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et, quo differant hae nationes inter sese, proponere. In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. Itaque eius rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii egeret: suos enim quis-

que opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae; namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

XII.

Rivalry between the leading tribes, the Sequani, Aedui, and Remi.

Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani. Hi cum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Aeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adiunxerant, eosque ad se magnis iacturis pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis, atque omni nobilitate Aeduorum interfecta, tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduis ad se traducerent, obsidesque ab iis principum filios acciperent, et publice iurare cogerent, nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent, Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. Qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus, auxilii petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus, imperfecta re redierat. Adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis (quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione atque

aequiore imperio se uti videbant), reliquis rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata, Sequani principatum dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successerant: quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Aeduis coniungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Aedui secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

XIII.

The ruling classes. (1) *The Druids—priests and lawgivers. Their yearly synod.*

In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo. Nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus: in hos eadem omnia sunt iura, quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur: ad eos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque

constituunt, et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec



DRUIDS. (From a bas-relief found at Autun.)

poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant, neque his petentibus ius redditur

neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, aut si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, nonnumquam etiam armis, de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur; et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causa proficiscuntur.

XIV.

Their privileges, training, and philosophy.

Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt, militiae vacationem omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis, et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicenos in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri

velint, neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. In primis hoc volunt persua-



Gallic Nobles. (From statues in the Museums at Avignon and Tongres.)

dere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac

terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et iuventuti tradunt.

XV.

(2) *The Nobles.*

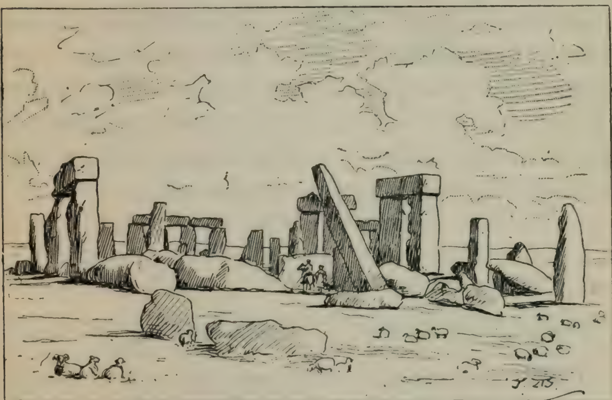
Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

XVI.

National superstition ; human sacrifices.

Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus ; atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolaturos vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur ; quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur ; publiceque eiusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent ; quibus succensis circumventi flamma exani-

mantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxa sint comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur: sed cum eius generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.



Remains of the Druidical Temple at Stonehenge.

XVII.

The gods of the Gauls.

Deum maxime Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plurima simulacra; hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt; hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem:

Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent: cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant, reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis conspicari licet; neque saepe accidit, ut neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

XVIII.

The origin of the Gauls. Their treatment of their sons.

Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies natales, mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur; filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt.

XIX.

Marriage. 'Patria potestas.' Funerals.

Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatione facta cum dotibus communicant. Huius omnis pecuniae coniunctim ratio habetur fructusque servantur: uter eorum vita superarit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illustriore loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia; ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, iustis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

XX.

Intelligence department.

Quae civitates commodius suam rem publicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de re publica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat neve

cum quo alio communicet; quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri, et ad facinus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus, quae visa sunt, occultant; quaeque esse ex usu iudicaverunt, multitudini produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

XXI.

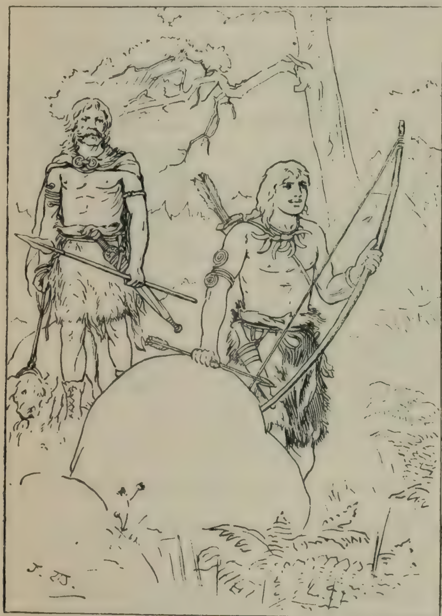
The Germans. Religion and customs.

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam; reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Qui diutissime impuberes permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali vires, nervosque confirmari putant. Intra annum vero vicesimum feminae notitiam habuisse in turpissimis habent rebus; cuius rei nulla est occultatio, quod et promiscue in fluminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvis renonum tegimentis utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda.

XXII.

Their nomadic habits.

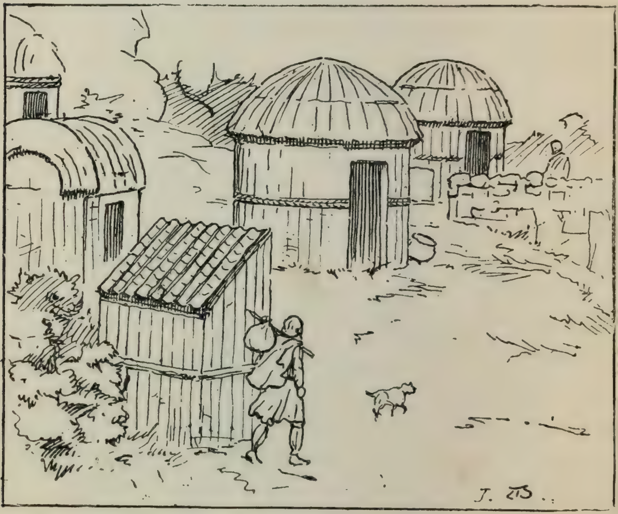
Agriculturae non student, maiorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque quis-



Germans. (From descriptions.)

quam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui una coie-

runt, quantum et quo loco visum est agri, attribuunt atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Eius rei multas afferunt causas: ne assidua consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultura commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant, potentioresque hu-



GERMAN HUTS. (From the Column of Marcus Aurelius.)

miliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

XXIII.

Their principles of warfare.

Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope audere consistere: simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae ac desidiae minuendae causa fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, se ducem fore, qui sequi velint, profiteantur, consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex his secuti non sunt, desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque his rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fas non putant: qui quacumque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent, sanctos habent; hisque omnium domus patent, victusque communicatur.

XXIV.

The Gauls are no longer a match for the Germans.

Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt, atque ibi consederunt; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet, summamque habet iustitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. Nunc, quod in eadem inopia, egestate, patientia, qua ante, Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur; Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus largitur; paulatim assuefacti superari, multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

XXV.

The Hercynian forest.

Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet; non enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauricorum finibus, rectaque fluminis

Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum dierum iter LX processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit; multaque in ea genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint: ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.



Ancient Drawing of a Reindeer. (Engraved on a pebble found in a Cave-dwelling at Bruniquel on the Aveyron, France.)

XXVI.

Its denizens; the reindeer.

Est bos cervi figura, cuius a media fronte inter aures unum cornu exsistit excelsius magisque

directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus: ab eius summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

XXVII.

The elk.

Sunt item, quae appellantur alces. Harum est consimilis capris figura et varietas pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt, mutilaeque sunt cornibus, et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quietis causa procumbunt neque, si quo afflictae casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut accidunt arbores, tantum ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt, atque una ipsae concidunt.

XXVIII.

The aurochs or wild ox.

Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, specie et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est

et magna velocitas; neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parcunt. Hos studiose foveis



Skull and Horns of the Urus or Bos Primigenus. (From the Nat. Hist. Museum, S. K.)



Bos Bonassus. Descendant of the Urus. (From specimen in Nat. Hist. Museum, S. K.)

captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore durant adulescentes, atque hoc genere venationis exercent; et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum

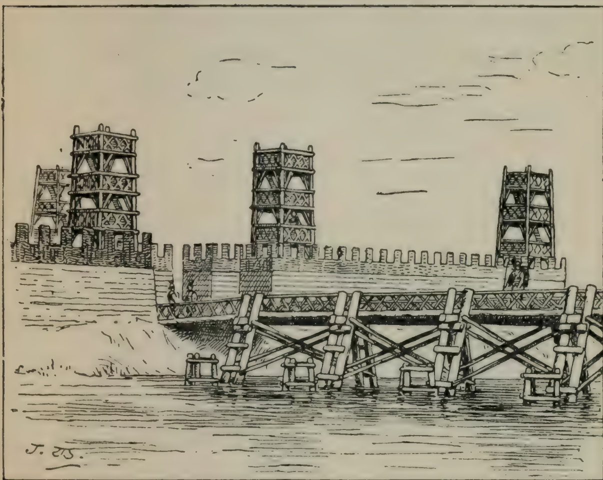
cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines et mansuefieri ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose conquisita ab labris argento circumcludunt, atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

XXIX.

The account of the campaign resumed. Caesar retires from Germany, and prepares to run Ambiorix to earth.

Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit, Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agri culturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu, partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longitudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit, atque in extremo ponte turrim tabulatorum quatuor constituit, praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Gaium Volcatium Tullum adulescentem praefecit. Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima, atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet, milibus-

que amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet, Lucium Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque oppor-



Bridge and Towers. (From models in the Museum at St. Germain.)

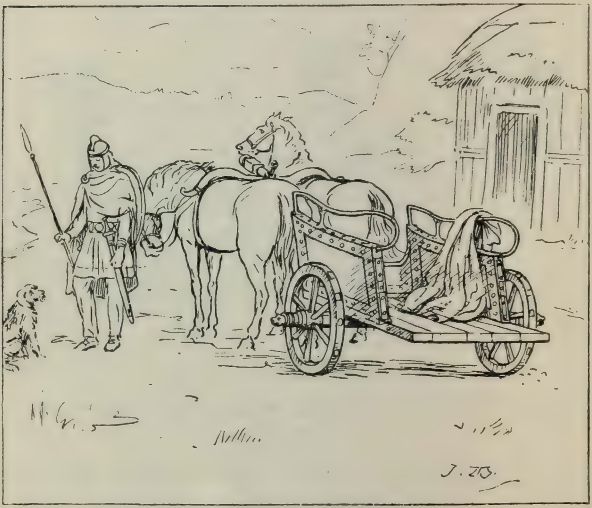
tunitate temporis proficere posset: monet, ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua eius adventus procul significatio fiat: sese confestim subsequi dicit.

XXX.

Ambiorix has a narrow escape.

Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit. Celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere, multos

in agris inopinantes deprehendit: eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparatum incideret, priusque eius



German War-Chariot. (From description and ancient drawings.)

adventus ab omnibus videretur, quam fama ac nuntius afferretur, sic magnae fuit fortunae, omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, redis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc quoque factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silva (ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum,

qui vitandi aestus causa plerumque silvarum atque fluminum petunt propinquitates) comites familiaresque eius angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

XXXI.

His followers go into hiding. Suicide of Catuvolcus.

Ambiorix copias suas iudicione non conduxerit, quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est. Sed certe, dimissis per agros nuntiis, sibi quemque consulere iussit. Quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit: qui proximi Oceano fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt: multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate iam confectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui eius consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, cuius magna in Gallia Germaniaque copia est, se exanimavit.

XXXII.

Submission of the Segni and Condrusi. A garrison is left in their midst.

Segni Condrusique, ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones Treverosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret, neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam iudicaret: nihil se de bello cogitasse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar, explorata re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit: si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum, copiis in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praesidio impedimentis legionem quartam decimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Quintum Tullium Ciceronem praeficit, ducentosque equites attribuit.

XXXIII.

The remainder of the army is divided and sent off on punitive expeditions.

Partito exercitu Titum Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quae Menapios attingunt, proficisci iubet: Gaium Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae ad Aduatucos adiacet, depopulandam mittit: ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partes ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiebat. Discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat; quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, deberi frumentum sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si rei publicae commodo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur, ut, rursus communicato consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud initium belli capere possent.

XXXIV.

The difficulties of the undertaking. The danger to stragglers.

Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet, sed in omnes partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique aut valles abdita aut locus silvestris aut

palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat non in summa exercitus tuenda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. Nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. Ut in eius modi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar: omnes evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur, simul ut magna multitudine circumfusa pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

XXXV.

The Sugambri cross the Rhine and raid the country of the Eburones.

Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic, quantum in bello fortuna possit, et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. Transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque triginta milibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum: primos Eburonum fines adeunt; multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt; magno pecoris numero, cuius sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praeda longius procedunt. Non hos palus in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt: profectum longius reperiunt, omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis,

'Quid vos,' inquit, 'hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum

contulit: praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat.'

Oblata spe Germani, quam nacti erant praedam, in occulto relinquunt: ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usi eodem duce, cuius haec indicio cognoverant.

XXXVI.

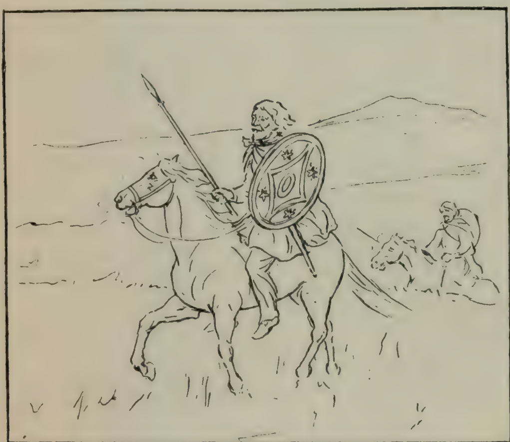
The garrison at Aduatuca grows over-confident.

Cicero, qui omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesaris cum summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset, ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die,—diffidens, de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius progressum audiebat, neque ulla de reditu eius fama afferebatur, simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egredi non liceret, nullum eius modi casum exspectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset,—quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant ex legionibus aegri relicti; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum convaluerant, circiter trecenti sub vexillo una mittuntur: magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis iumentorum, quae in castris subsederant, facta potestate sequitur.

XXXVII.

It is surprised by the Sugambri.

Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites interveniunt, protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur; nec prius sunt visi, obiectis ab ea parte silvis, quam



German Horse-Soldier. (From the Column of Marcus Aurelius.)

castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut, qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri

tuentur; reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident. Alius castra iam capta pronuntiat: alius, deleto exercitu atque imperatore, victores barbaros venisse contendit: plerique novas sibi ex



Attack on a Roman Camp. (From Trajan's Column.)

loco religiones fingunt, Cottaeque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

XXXVIII.

Sextius Baculus succeeds in keeping the enemy out of the camp.

Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cuius mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem iam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic diffisus suae atque omnium saluti inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt imminere hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones eius cohortis, quae in statione erat: paulisper una proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium, gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant.

XXXIX.

The foraging party returns in haste. It is attacked.

Interim, confecta frumentatione, milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt: praecurrunt equites: quanto res sit in periculo, cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his praecipiatur, exspectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt: redisse primo

legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant: postea despecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.



General addressing his Men.—A Centurion with the staff in his hand. (From the Arch of Constantine.)

XL.

One portion fights its way into camp safely.
Another portion suffers severely.

Calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt. Hinc celeriter deiecti se in signa manipulosque coniciunt:

eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et, si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt; alii, ut in iugo consistant atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati duce Gaio Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam prodesse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt, sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines huius legionis traducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute summotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

XLI.

The Sugambri retire. The garrison is thoroughly cowed.

Germani, desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant,

cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum Gaius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret, adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnino animos timor praeoccupaverat, ut paene alienata mente deletis omnibus copiis equitatum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent, neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

XLII.

Caesar reaches Aduatuca. He moralizes over Ambiorix' good fortune.

Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignorans, unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, questus—ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse—multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse iudicavit, multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

XLIII.

Parties sent out to harry the country. Ambiorix proves himself a will-o'-the-wisp.

Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno

coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus, in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur: praeda ex omnibus locis agebatur: frumenta non solum



Burning a Village. (From the Column of Marcus Aurelius.)

tanta multitudine iumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant, ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his deducto exercitu rerum

omnium inopia pereundum videretur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est, tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fuga circumspicerent captivi, nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent; ut, spe consequendi illata, atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur; atque ille latebris aut saltibus se eriperet, et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret non maiore equitum praesidio quam quatuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.

XLIV.

Acco is executed; others are banished. Arrangements for the winter.

Tali modo vastatis regionibus exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit; concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto, de coniuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit; et de Accone, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronuntiata, more maiorum supplicium sumpsit. Nonnulli iudicium veriti profugerunt. Quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Treverorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agedinci in hibernis collocavit; frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

NOTES

I.

Line 1. **maiorem . . . motum,** 'a more important rising.' For the previous winter, B.C. 54–3, Caesar had placed his legions in winter camps in the enemy's country at considerable distances from each other. Two of them had been surprised, and one (that under Q. Titurius, see below, l. 17) cut to pieces.

3. **legatos,** 'commanders.' Each *legatus* commanded a legion, which in Caesar's time numbered at least 3,000 men. The word is often used to mean 'an ambassador,' 'envoy.'

delectum habere, 'to enrol troops.'

5. **petit** . . . The order is—*petit ab Gn. P.* (*ut*)—*quoniam ipse . . . remaneret—iuberet* (*eos*) *quos . . . rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci.*

petit: historic present, i.e. a present tense used in narrative. The verbs in the subjunctive which depend upon *petit* are in historic tenses.

ipse: Pompey.

cum imperio, 'with his commission' or 'command.' A consul, pro-consul, praetor, or pro-praetor received an *imperium*, i.e. the right to command an army, and was called *imperator.* His subordinate officers, the *legati* for example, had no *imperium.* The commander-in-chief was not allowed inside the walls of Rome until he had resigned his *imperium*: see next note.

ad Urbem, 'in the neighbourhood of Rome': not *in Urbe*, 'in Rome,' for the reason just stated.

5, 6. **rei publicae causa,** 'in the interests of the Republic.'

6. **remaneret.** *Quoniam* is usually followed by the indica-

tive. The subj. is here used because the sentence is part of the request made by Caesar.

[NOTE.—In nine cases out of ten a Latin *subjunctive* tense should be translated by the corresponding English *indicative* tense. Thus:

cum milites convenissent, *profectus est*,
'when the troops *had assembled* he started.']

6, 7. **quos . . . rogavisset,** 'whom he had enlisted in Cisalpine Gaul.' The phrase is *rogare (aliquem) sacramento*, lit. 'to ask any one by a pledge.' *consulis sacramentum* = 'the oath of allegiance to the consul.'

7. **rogavisset:** subjunctive for same reason as *remaneret*.

ad signa convenire, 'to join the colours.' The *signum* or standard of a legion was the figure of an eagle supported on a staff and borne by a *signifer*.

8. **magni:** gen. of price.

inter-esse: from *inter-est*, impersonal verb. *interest magni* = 'it concerns (us) at a great (price).'

[NOTE.—The 'accusative and infinitive' construction may sometimes (as here) be translated literally, 'thinking it (acc.) to-be (infin.),' &c. More often we must translate 'thinking (that) it was,' &c.]

9. **existimans** agrees with the subject to *petit*.

[NOTE.—Words in the nominative case *must* either be subject or belong to the subject.

Participles frequently stand for a clause; thus (in chap. iii.) *hoc initium belli esse arbitratus, transfert*, &c. = *quod hoc . . . esse arbitrabatur, transfert*, &c.; and in the present passage *existimans* = *quod existimabat*.]

ad opinionem Galliae, 'with regard to Gallic opinion.' *Galliae* is subjective genitive, 'the impression which the Gauls have of us,' *not* objective genitive 'the impression which we have of the Gauls.'

10. **tantas:** predicate, the order being *facultates . . . videri tantas, ut*. **videri,** 'should be seen (to be).'

si quid: *quis*, indef. pron. (= any), is used after *si, nisi, nē, num*, and sometimes *cum*.

10, 11. **quid detrimenti,** 'any loss.' *detrimenti* is partitive genitive. The construction is very common, cf. *aliquid novi, nihil argenti, nihil consilii* (cf. chap. xii.), &c., and the French *assez d'argent*.

11, 12. **brevi tempore:** abl. of 'time within which' anything takes place.

12. **resarciri . . . augeri** mean literally 'to be repaired (as clothes) . . . increased.' As they refer to *detrimentum*, which

means 'a rubbing off' (*de + tritum*), so 'loss,' 'damage,' 'defeat' we may translate 'it (the loss) should not only be quickly repaired, but also more than made good.'

14. **amicitiae**: Pompey's friendship for Caesar was even at this time waning: see Introd. p. 4.

per suos, 'by means of his own' (people, or friends, or officers): see l. 2.

15. **ante exactam hiemem**, 'before the close of the winter,' lit. 'before the closed winter.'

18, 19. **quid . . . possent**: lit. 'what the discipline and . . . were able,' i.e. 'could accomplish': see note on chap. xiii. 15.

II.

2. **imperium**: not used technically as above (i. 5) but generally, 'sovereignty,' 'power.'

Treveri: see Index of Names.

6. **confirmant**: supply *coniurationem*.

iure iurando: these words, like *res publica* (i. 13), are often written as one. Each part is declined.

7. **cavent de . . .**, lit. 'take care about the money by hostages,' i.e. 'give hostages as security for the money.'

8. **quibus rebus . . .**: in this sentence the subject is *Caesar*, the verb is *putavit*; *cum . . . sollicitari* is a long parenthesis.

9. **videret** is here followed by *four* accus. and infin. clauses.

10. **Nervios**, &c.: see map and Index of Names.

10, 11. **adiunctis . . . Germanis**: abl. abs. Tr. 'together with . . .' (lit. 'all the . . . Germans having been added').

14. **maturius**: *mature* means 'at the proper time,' 'seasonably.' The comparative means 'more seasonably,' 'at a time nearer than is proper, or usual.' Tr. 'promptly,' which implies 'sooner than he would otherwise have done.'

15. **cogitandum**: sc. *esse*, lit. 'he thought (that) it ought-to-be-meditated about the war by-him (*sibi*).'

[Note.—The agent is usually expressed by *a* or *ab* + abl. But after a gerundive the dative is used. Thus *laudatur a patre*, but *laudandus est patri*.]

III.

3, 4. **priusquam . . . possent.** *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used with indic. or subj., but the change of mood changes the meaning.

priusquam advenit, discessi = 'I departed before he came.'

priusquam adveniret, discessi = 'I departed before he could come.'

Both show that one event happened before the other, but the subj. expresses the *further* idea that 'my departure prevented our meeting.'

8. **hiberna:** an adj. agreeing with *castra* understood.

9. **primo vere:** abl. of 'time when,' 'at the commencement of spring'; cf. *medium flumen,* 'the middle *of* the river,' *summus mons,* 'the top *of* the mountain.'

> [NOTE.—Commencement, middle, top are nouns; *primus, medius, summus* are adjectives. This explains why it is wrong to say *medium fluminis, summus montis.*]

ut instituerat: *ut* with indic. means 'as' or 'when'; with subj. 'in order that,' 'that,' 'so that,' and sometimes 'though.'

11. **arbitratus:** see note on chap. i. 9. Remember that *arbitror* is deponent, and therefore its past part. has an active meaning.

11, 12. **ut . . . videretur** = *ut viderent eum omnia postponere,* 'that (see note on l. 9 above) they might see (that) he considered everything of less importance than this.'

12. **postpono** is followed by accus. and dat., as are so many verbs compounded with a preposition. *pono,* being transitive, requires the accus.: *post-* accounts for the dative. Thus

post-   *pono*
| |
officio   *voluptatem*

'I place pleasure after duty.'

Lutetiam: not object, but place 'to which,' without a preposition as it is the name of a town. It is the modern Paris.

13. **Parisiorum:** gen. of possessor; cp. chap. xliv. 2.

14. **memoria,** 'within the memory of,' abl. of time 'within which' (see i. 12).

15. **ab hoc consilio a-fuisse:** lit. 'to have been absent from this plot.' *a(b)fuisse* from *absum.* Notice its tense.

15, 16. **pro suggestu,** 'from the front of the platform.'

17. **magnis itineribus:** abl. of manner. 'By great (as we say, forced) marches.' **pervenit** 'comes-through to-that-place (*eo*),' i.e. arrives there.

IV.

1. **Acco:** nominative.

2. **consilii:** see chap. iii. 9–15.

3, 4. **conantibus . . . nuntiatur.** An excellent sample of

the Latin sentence. Lit. 'to (them) trying (to accomplish this) the-Romans-to-be-at-hand is announced.' *adesse Romanos* is really subject to *nuntiatur*. Such sentences have to be expressed in English in a different shape. Tr. 'While they were attempting this, but before it could be carried out, the news comes that the Romans are upon them.'

> [NOTE.—It is just these differences between Latin and English that create the difficulties. The golden rule is: (1) Pull the Latin sentence to pieces and find out *exactly* what it means. (2) Reproduce the *sense* of the Latin in natural English; but do not always feel bound to translate word for word. The result is apt to be fantastic.]

3. **priusquam . . . posset:** for subj. see note on chap. iii. 3, 4. Here, the indicative might have been written.

posset: historic tense depending on the historic present *nuntiatur*.

4. **necessario:** the abl. of an adj. used as an adverb; cp. *de improviso* (iii. 2).

sententia: abl. of separation.

5. **legatos:** see note on chap. i. 3.

deprecandi: gen. of gerund (*not* gerundive) depending upon *causa*.

6, 7. **quorum . . . civitas:** to be taken together.

7. **in fide** = under the protection (of Rome).

[*Quorum* might be taken with *in fide*, see below, *quorum in clientela*. *Civitas* would then refer, not (as it is generally taken) to the Aedui, but to the Senones.]

8. **quod . . .:** the order is *arbitratur aestivum tempus esse* (*tempus*) *instantis belli*, *non* (*tempus*) *quaestionis*.

9. **quaestionis:** *quaestio* is the regular word for a judicial investigation.

11. **custodiendos:** gerundive, agreeing with *hos*. 'Hands them over to the Aedui to-be-guarded.' The gerundive here = *ut custodirentur*.

> [NOTE.—The gerund is a noun, the *name* of an action (see above, l. 5); the gerundive is an adjective.]

eodem, 'to the same place.' Caesar was at this time among the Senones, probably at their capital, Agedincum, which was situated on the Sequana (Seine), some distance above Lutetia (Paris). The Carnutes dwelt to the south-west, the Remi to the north-west.

12. **deprecatoribus Remis:** *Remis* is abl. after *usi*; *deprecatoribus* is in apposition to Remi. *deprecator* (the noun of *de-precor*, 'I beg-off') = 'a begger-off,' 'an intercessor.'

13. **in clientela,** 'in dependence (or vassalage).' The powerful Roman of these days took a pride in being the *patronus* of a circle of needy *clientes* (dependents), whom he fed and protected.

V.

1, 2. **et mente et animo,** 'heart and soul'; abl. of manner.

2. **bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis:** gen. of definition. 'The war *against* the Treveri,' cp. chap. xxix. 16.

3. **Cavarinum.** He had been appointed king of the Senones by Caesar, but fled the country in the previous year (B.C. 54) to escape assassination, and took refuge with Caesar (see Bk. V, chap. liv).

4, 5. **ne . . . exsistat:** subjunctive expressing purpose; *ne* = 'in order that not.' See chap. ix. 4, 5.

4. **quis:** indef. used with *ne*; see note on chap. i. 10. *Ne quis motus*, 'that no rising,' lit. 'that-not any rising.'

ex huius iracundia, . . . ex eo . . . odio. Prepositions are frequently separated from the word they govern, provided they can (as here) precede a genitive case or an adjective belonging to the governed word. **huius iracundia,** 'his (Cavarinus') resentment.'

huius is possessive genitive.

6. **pro explorato:** see note on *necessario* (iv. 4).

7. **esse concertaturum.** We frequently find the future infinitive (and other compound tenses) put in this order; sometimes *esse* is omitted altogether.

8. **eius consilia:** i.e. Ambiorix' plans. *eius* cannot refer to the subject of the sentence (Caesar).

animo circumspiciebat, 'began to consider,' lit. 'look round in (or with) his mind.' The imperfect frequently expresses the *beginning* of an action. **animo** is an abl. of manner; **proelio** in the previous line is similar. These ablatives are practically adverbs,—we might say here 'looked round *mentally*.' Note the tense.

9. **Eburonum:** see map and Index of Names.

finibus: dat. after *propinqui*, a word expressing 'nearness.'

perpetuis, 'unbroken,' 'continuous.'

10. **uni ex Gallia,** 'alone of (all) Gaul.'

12. **hospitium,** 'ties of friendship.' *Hospes* is one who extends his hospitality to another, or who accepts it from another. *hospitium* + dat. + *cum* + abl.; say, 'that Ambiorix was their guest-friend.'

Ambiorigi: dat. of possessor, like *est mihi equus*.

13. **venisse**: the subject is *eum* (understood).

cognoverat, '*had* ascertained': *sciebat* (above), 'knew' (imperf. expressing a continuing result).

14. **haec prius** . . . The order is: *existimabat haec auxilia detrahenda (esse) illi priusquam*, &c.

detrahenda esse = 'were to-be-detached,' i. e. ought to be (or must be) detached. **Illi**, dat. of disadvantage. **Prius-quam** is often divided as here.

15. **lacesseret** is here subj. because, being dependent on *existimabat*, it is virtually reported speech (or thought).

bello: abl. of manner; see *animo* above.

16. **se in Menapios abderet**, 'should take himself off to the Menapii.' It is from this meaning of taking one's self off for concealment that *abdo* gets its meaning, 'I hide.'

16, 17. **abderet . . . cogeretur**: subj. after *nē*, expressing purpose. It is called a 'final' subjunctive. Cp. 4, 5 above.

17. **congredi**, 'to unite with.'

inito. *Eo*, *per-eo*, are intransitive; *in-eo*, *ad-eo*, *trans-eo*, *circum-eo* are transitive, and can therefore be used in the passive.

18. **ad Labienum in Treveros**: lit. 'to Labienus to the Treveri,' i. e. 'to Labienus in (the territories of) the Treveri.' Notice the difference between Latin and English, cp. chap. xii. 16.

20. **expeditis**, 'light-armed'; *impeditus*, 'heavy-armed.' See Intr. p. 15.

21. **praesidio**. *Freti* requires ablative.

VI.

1. **partitis**: past part. pass. The verb has two forms, *partio* (active) and *partior* (deponent).

2. **quaestore**: see Intr. p. 13.

3. **tripertito**: see note on *necessario*, chap. iv. 4.

4. **numero**: ablative after *potior*.

5, 6. **pacis petendae**: gerundive attraction.

[Note.—This construction results when a verb-noun is being used, *if* the verb is transitive. Thus:—

I am desirous **of sleeping**.

Cupidus sum **dormiendi**.

Dormio is, of course, intransitive.

But suppose, instead of *dormio*, we have a transitive verb, thus:—

I am desirous **of seeing-my-sister**;

We say,

Not *Cupidus sum videndi* **sororem,**

But *Cupidus sum* **videndae sororis.**

The rules are :—

(*a*) Get the verb-noun in the right case (here, it has to be genitive).

(*b*) Turn the verb-noun, i.e. the gerund (*videndum, -i, -o*), into the verb-adjective i.e. the gerundive (*videndus, -a, -um*).

(*c*) Put the object into the same *case* as the verb.

(*d*) Put the verb into the same *number* and *gender* as the object.]

7. **hostium numero,** 'as foes'; cp. chap. xiii. 3, and *custodis loco*, below.

habiturum: supply *esse*. See note on chap. v. 7. The object is *eos* understood.

8. **finibus suis:** either local or instrumental; probably the former.

recepissent: subj. because part of Caesar's statement, i.e. it is in Reported Speech (Oratio Obliqua). His words were, *hostium ego numero* (*vos*) *habebo, si aut Ambiorigem aut eius legatos finibus vestris receperitis* (fut. perf. indic.). *Receperitis*, when made to depend on the historic present *confirmat*, becomes historic subjunctive.

10. **custodis loco:** see note on *numero* above.

VII.

1. **dum . . . geruntur:** *dum*, meaning 'while,' is followed by the present indicative, though the principal verbs are in the past, if the principal sentence describes something that took place *during the time* denoted by the *dum*-clause.

4. **non longius bidui via,** 'not more than two days' march.' **bidui** here is gen. of *biduum*, a noun; **via** is abl. of comparison after *longius*, *quam* being omitted. The phrase is a shortened form of *non longiorem viam quam bidui viam aberant*.

5, 6. **cum . . . cognoscunt:** *cum* is usually followed by the subjunctive, because usually some further idea is expressed than the *time*. Thus in chap. ii. l. 4, 5, *cum . . . non possent ulteriores temptant* gives us the added idea that the failure of the Treveri to stir up their neighbours was the *cause* of their attempt to stir up *ulteriores* (the Germans). But when there is *no such further idea*, in other words, when the time at

which two events happened relatively to each other is all we wish to express, then we may use (as here) *cum* with the indicative.

5. **missu.** Many words of this declension (derived from verbs) are used in the ablative only: cp. *iussu*, *iniussu.*

6, 7. **a milibus passuum quindecim,** 'fifteen miles away'; the regular construction. See note on chap. xxxv. 13.

9. **sperans:** see note on chap. i. 9.

temeritate: abl. of cause.

fore. Verbs of hoping, promising, and swearing are followed by accus. with future infin.

10. **impedimentis:** dat. of advantage.

14, 15. **transitu . . . ripis:** abls. of quality.

[Note.—Observe that each has an epithet. We can say 'a man of wisdom,' but Latin cannot say *vir sapientiā*: the quality *sapientia* must have some appropriate adjective, *vir magnā sapientiā.*]

15, 16. **hoc transire** depends on the phrase *habebat in animo*, 'intended.'

16. **transituros** (*esse*).

18. **consilio,** 'the council of war.' It also means 'a plan,' 'purpose,' 'plot.'

quoniam . . . Labienus' words were: *Quoniam Germani appropinquare dicuntur, ego meas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocabo et crastino die prima luce castra movebo.*

19. **suas exercitusque fortunas:** *exercitus* is genitive, 'his fortunes and (those) of the army.'

21. **castra moturum** (*esse*). This phrase, or *signa movere*, is the technical expression for breaking up camp.

22. **deferuntur.** *Defero* is the regular word for making a report.

22–24. **ut . . . cogebat:** see note on chap. iii. 9. *ut* here has the meaning of 'seeing that,' 'seeing that many of our large force of Gallic cavalry were naturally bound to favour Gallic interests.'

23. **Gallicis rebus:** dat. after *faveo.*

24, 25. **tribunis militum primisque ordinibus:** see Introd. p. 13, 14. The centurions were men '*qui ordines duxerunt.*' Hence they are frequently referred to as *ordines*, the senior centurions (*primipili*) as *primi ordines.*

25. **quid . . . sit:** subj. because indirect question.

quid . . . consilii: see note on chap. i. 10, 11.

26. **quo facilius . . . det** = *ut eo facilius . . . det.* **det** subj. after *ut* final: see note on *abderet*, chap. v. 16.

quo is an adv. (really an abl. of measure) qualifying

facilius: cp. *quo brevius, eo melius iter*, 'by how (much) the journey (is) shorter, by that (much) (it is) better.'

suspicionem timoris: i.e. of Labienus' fear.

29. **fugae.** *Similis* takes either gen. or dat.

effecit: note the tense.

30. **in tanta propinquitate,** 'as the camps were so close to each other.'

VIII.

1. **agmen novissimum,** 'the rear-guard.'

2–9. **cum Galli . . . non dubitant.** *Dubitant* is the predicate to *Galli*. From *cohortati* to *audeant* is a parenthesis.

cum . . . dubitant. *Cum* + indic.: see note on chap. vii. 22.

2. **cohortati inter se**: *cohortor* usually takes a direct object, 'encouraging each other not to let their anticipated plunder slip from their grasp.'

2, 3. **ne . . . dimitterent.** In reported speech a command or exhortation is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive.

3. **longum esse.** We must imagine *dicunt* or *exclamant* before *longum*. The words of the Gauls are still being recorded, but they have changed from exhortation (expressed by subj.) to statement (expressed by accus. and infin.). 'It would be wearisome to await the aid of the Germans, now that the Romans were panic-stricken.'

4. **perterritis Romanis**: abl. abs. used to denote time.

5–7. **ut . . . audeant.** *Patior* is here followed by *ut* + subj. which is unusual. Consequently *audeant* would be subjunctive even if this passage were not Reported Speech.

7. **audeant** is consecutive subjunctive (i.e. it expresses result or consequence).

> [Note how our idiom differs from Latin: 'and their sense-of-honour (*dignitatem*) did not allow them to be afraid (*non audeant*),' &c. Latin says, 'did not allow them that they were afraid. . . .' *Cohortati ne dimitterent* (above) is another example.]

impeditam: see note on l. 12 below.

8. **iniquo loco**: abl. of place where. The preposition *in* is omitted because *loco* has an epithet. **iniquus** (*in* + *aequus*) means 'not-level,' so 'unfair,' 'unfavourable.'

9. **quae fore suspicatus**: *quae* = *et ea*. 'And Labienus, suspecting that this (*ea*) would be the case.' **suspicor** is deponent; **quae fore** accus. and infin.

> [Note.—*Quae* is really a conjunction and pronoun wrapped in one. It is *only* in sentences like this that *qui* can have its verb in the infinitive.]

10. **eadem simulatione**: abl. after *utor*, 'keeping up the same pretence of marching.'

[Note.—*simulo timorem*, 'I feign a fear (which I do not feel)'; *dissimulo timorem*, 'I hide a fear (which I do feel).']

11. **progrediebatur**: imperf. denotes continuing action.

12. **impedimentis** (*in-pedio*, 'I entangle my foot'). *Impedimentum*, 'a hindrance,' *impedimenta* (plur.), 'baggage,' *impeditus* (above) means 'entangled,' 'hindered,' so 'encumbered (with baggage).' *impedito* (just below) bears the same meaning, but, being applied to *loco*, we must use another word, say 'difficult.'

14. **petistis** = *petivistis*.

16. **nobis ducibus**: dat. 'to us, your leaders.' Caesar was absent with the bulk of the army overawing the Menapii.

17. **imperatori**: i.e. Caesar: see note on chap. i. 5.

18. **coram**: adverb.

19. **signa converti.** *Signa convertere* is the regular phrase for 'to wheel round,' 'to face round.'

aciem dirigere or *instruere* is another technical term, 'to form battle order.'

20. **praesidio**: dat. of purpose.

21. **ad latera,** 'on the wings.' *ad* with accus. often means 'hard by': cp. chap. i. *ad Urbem.*

disponit: *dis-* usually implies 'in different spots,' 'in different directions.' Thus, *diffugiunt* (*dis-fugiunt*) = 'they fly in all directions.'

23, 24. **ubi . . . viderunt**: the object is understood; (*eos*), *quos* . . . .

24. **infestis signis**: lit. 'with hostile standards,' i.e. 'charging.'

impetum modo, 'the mere onset.' *modo* is an adverb.

25. **concursu**: lit. 'the running together,' i.e. 'encounter.'

28. **complures** naturally has no singular.

paucis post diebus, 'a few days later.' *post* is here an adverb; *paucis diebus*, abl., answering the question 'how long after?' We may also write *post paucos dies*, where *post* is, of course, a preposition.

28, 29. **civitatem recepit,** 'received (the submission of) the state.' Just below, *recipio* has its more literal meaning.

29. **auxilio**: dat. of purpose; see *praesidio*, l. 20.

30. **domum**: accus. expressing place to which. Why is the preposition omitted?

33, 34. **in officio,** lit. 'in loyalty.' Translate by the adjective 'loyal.'

34. **principatus,** 'the position of *princeps*,' 'the chieftaincy.' Notice that *traditum est* agrees with its second subject only.

IX.

1. **Caesar, postquam . . . venit.** Do not translate 'Caesar, after he . . .,' but 'after Caesar had come.'

[NOTE.—We say 'after he *had come*,' using the pluperfect. Latin uses the perfect after *postquam*.]

3, 4. **una . . . altera,** 'one . . . the other.' In such cases *altera . . . altera* is more usual. Cp. chap. xii. 1.

4. **miserant.** The context shows that the subject is *Germani*.

4, 5. **ne . . . haberet:** final subjunctive, see chap. v. 4, 5, *ne quis motus exsistat*.

5. **paulum supra,** 'a little above,' probably a short distance below Coblentz. The previous bridge (described in Book IV) was built three years earlier (B.C. 56) at Bonn.

6. **ante:** adverb.

7. **nota atque instituta ratione:** either causal abl. abs., 'the method being known and established,' i.e. 'because it was known,' or 'according to the known and established method,' an ablative of manner.

[The ablative absolute has many shades of meaning:—

i. Causal. *Caesare mortuo, ploravi*, 'I wept, because Caesar was dead.'

ii. Temporal. *Caesare mortuo, plorabam*, 'When Caesar was dead, I began to weep.'

iii. Conditional. *Caesare mortuo, plorabo*, 'I shall weep, if Caesar is dead.'

Observe that 'Caesar being dead' covers all these meanings.]

7, 8. **magno studio:** abl. of cause.

8. **paucis diebus:** why ablative?

9. **ad pontem,** 'near the bridge.' See note on *ad latera* in chap. viii. 21.

9, 10. **ne quis . . . motus:** see chap. v. 4, 5.

10. **ab his,** i.e. the Treveri.

oreretur: some parts of *orior* and *potior* are like the 3rd conjugation, though the verbs really belong to the 4th conjugation.

11. **ante:** adverb as above, l. 6.

12. **purgandi sui causa:** gerundive attraction, see note on vi. 5. If there were no such thing as gerundive attraction,

we should have *purgandi sese causa* (*purgandi*, gen. after *causa* ; *sese*, accus. object to *purgandi*).

13. **legatos qui doceant,** ' ambassadors to explain ' ; lit. ' who should explain.' The subjunctive is final.

13–15. **neque auxilia . . . missa** (*esse*), **neque . . . fidem laesam** (*esse*) : two accus. and infin. depending on *doceant.*

14. **ex sua . . . ab se.** *suus* and *se* always refer to the subject of the governing verb.

15. **petunt . . . orant** followed by *ut* + subjunctive, cp. i. 5.

sibi : dat. after *parco.*

15–17. **ne . . . pendant :** final subjunctive depending on *parcat.*

15, 16. **communi odio :** abl. of attendant circumstances.

17. **poenas pendant :** lit. ' weigh-out the punishment.' (Punishments were often fines of money, grain, &c., which were paid by weight.) So it means ' be punished,' ' suffer.'

obsidum : partitive gen. depending on *amplius*, a neuter word expressing quantity ; cp. *quid detrimenti*, chap. i. 10, 11.

vellet : historic. In this passage the tense implies that the supposition is unlikely. In direct speech we should probably have *velis*, not *voles.*

dare : we should expect to find accus. and future infin., after a verb of promising.

[The actual words of the Ubii were—*nobis parce, ne . . . poenas pendamus ; si amplius obsidum velis, dabimus.*]

20. **in Suebos :** with *aditus viasque.*

X.

1. **paucis post diebus :** see note on chap. viii. 28.

2. **cogere** = *co-* (*cum-*) *agere,* ' bring together.'

3. **sint :** not *sunt,* because from *Suebos* to *mittant* is Reported Speech. *Mittant* would in any case be subj., for it depends on a verb of ordering.

5. **rem frumentariam,** ' the food supply.' *res* has a wide use in Latin. You must beware of translating it always by ' thing ' or ' affair.'

6. **castris :** dat. after *idoneus.*

6, 7. **ut . . . deducant.** *Impero* is followed by *ut* + subj. ; *iubeo* by accus. and infin.

7. **sua,** ' their property.' We might have expected, according to strict rules of grammar, *eorumque omnia* (see note on chap. ix. 14). But we often find *se* and *suus* used to refer to persons not the subject of the governing verb, if the meaning is quite clear.

8. **sperans:** see note on chap. i. 9.

9. **inopia:** abl. of cause: being a word implying want, it is followed by a genitive (objective).

9, 10. **ad iniquam . . . deduci,** 'might be induced to give battle at a disadvantage.'

10. **posse.** *Possum* has no future infin.

mandat, like *imperat* (above), is followed by *ut* + subj.

11, 12. **quae . . . gerantur:** subj. because it is an indirect question; see chap. vii. 25.

13. **Suebos omnes . . .** From here to the end of the chapter is Reported Speech.

14, 15. **posteaquam . . . venerint.** *posteaquam* (=*postquam*) takes perf. indic. (see note on chap. ix. 1). Of course in Reported Speech this becomes subj.

14. **certiores nuntii,** 'trustworthy information.' *nuntius* means 'a messenger' or 'a message.' For *certiores* see note on *maturius*, chap. ii. 14.

17. **infinita magnitudine:** abl. of quality; see note on chap. vii. 14.

17, 18. **quae appellatur Bacenis.** This is not a part of the report of the Ubii, for then we should have *appelletur* (subj.). It is an explanation inserted by the writer.

18, 19. **pro nativo muro,** 'by way of a natural barrier.'

20. **prohibere** has two uses. *Prohibeo te ab hoste*, 'I keep you off your enemy.' *Prohibeo te scelere*, 'I keep you from wrong.' The two are here united. Say 'keeps the Cherusci and Suebi from acts of violence and pillage against each other'; but remember that this is by no means literal.

XI.

1. **quoniam . . . perventum est:** lit. 'since it has been come . . .,' say 'as we have reached this point.' For *quoniam* see note on chap. i. 6.

1, 2. **non alienum,** 'appropriate.'

3. **quo differant . . . inter sese:** we say 'wherein they differ *from* each other,' or simply, 'wherein they differ,' or less literally, 'their points of difference.' *differant* is subj., being the verb of an indirect question; see chaps. vii. 25; x. 11.

7. **principes sunt** (*ii*) **qui.**

8. **eorum** refers, of course, to the Gauls.

9, 10. **quorum ad arbitrium . . . redeat:** causal subj. Say 'inasmuch as on their decision and judgment rests the final settlement of every undertaking.' Caesar often uses *summa*,

which is a noun, and means 'the main point,' 'the chief thing.'

10, 11. **eius rei causa . . . ne quis . . .**, 'with this view, that that no . . .' **egeret:** final subj.

11. **institutum** (*esse*).

12. **auxilii:** gen. after a word expressing want.

quisque, 'each of the leading men.'

14. **aliter si faciat,** 'were he to do otherwise.' It would be more regular for *faciat* to be followed by *habeat.*

XII.

1. **cum . . . venit.** Notice the mood; see note on chap. vii. 5.

1, 2. **alterius . . . alterius:** 'the one . . . the other.' *Alter* is always used when contrasting *two* persons or things; see chap. ix. 3, 4.

2. **hi** refers to the nearer of two subjects, i. e. *Sequani.*

2, 3. **cum . . . valerent.** *Cum . . . venit* (above) expresses time *only*; this phrase expresses time, *but also* gives a cause for what the principal verb *adiunxerant* tells us the Sequani did. It is therefore called a *causal* subjunctive. 'Since these latter were not very (lit. less) powerful of themselves.'

6. **iacturis:** a noun, 'sacrifices' (lit. 'a throwing away').

9. **potentia:** abl. of respect. The ablative, used thus, expresses the point in which the verb is true.

9–15. **ut . . . traducerent . . . acciperent . . . cogerent . . . possiderent . . . obtinerent** are all consecutive subjs. Be careful to translate the tenses correctly.

12. **publice:** 'in the name of their state.'

12, 13. **nihil consilii:** see note on chap. i. 10, 11. It is the object to *inituros* (*esse*).

13. **finitimi agri:** partitive gen.

[NOTE.—Do not, as a rule, translate *ager* by 'field.'
occupo by 'occupy.'
obtineo by 'obtain.']

[NOTE.—Sentences like this, *partem agri occupatam possiderent* = *partem agri occupavissent atque possiderent*, and should be translated in that way.]

16. **auxilii petendi:** see note on chaps. vi. 5, 6.

Romam ad senatum. Latin says 'to Rome to the Senate'; we say 'to the Senate at Rome'; cp. chap. v. 18.

17. **. . . profectus, imperfecta re redierat:** 'had pro-

ceeded . . ., *but* had returned without accomplishing his object.'

18. **facta commutatione,** &c. This string of ablatives absolute are best translated by indicatives.

Aeduis: dative.

21, 22. **condicione . . . imperio:** ablatives after *uti*, which is infinitive after *videbant*, 'saw that they enjoyed . . .'

22, 23. **reliquis . . . amplificata,** 'their influence and importance were increased in all other respects.' After these five statements, round off your translation by saying '*and thus* the Sequani . . .'

23. **dignitateque.** *Que* is very rarely placed after *ĕ*. Do not imitate it.

25. **quos** = *et eos*. The order is—*et quod intellegebatur* (impersonal) *eos* (the Remi) *adaequare* (*Aeduos*) *gratia*, &c.

27. **coniungi:** lit. 'be united.' We should say 'unite,' using the word intransitively.

[NOTE.—Many English verbs are both transitive and intransitive. Thus, we can say, 'The horse moves the chariot' (trans.), and 'The chariot moves' (intrans.). In Latin the former is *Equus currum movet*; the latter must be put in the passive, *currus movetur.*]

28. **dĭcabant:** not from *dīco, dicĕre.*

30. **eo statu . . . ut:** 'in such a condition that . . .' The subjs. following *ut* are consecutive.

XIII.

1. **eorum hominum:** partitive gen.

1, 2. **aliquo numero atque honore:** abl. of quality; 'any account and esteem.'

3. **plebes:** also spelt *plebs.*

servorum habetur loco, 'are regarded as slaves'; cp. chap. vi. 7 *hostium numero.*

3, 4. **nihil audet:** *nihil* is not object, but an adverbial accus.; cp. chap. i. 18, 19. The adverbial accus. limits the action of verbs (i. e. says to what extent the action takes place).

5. **aere alieno,** 'in debt,' lit. 'in another man's money'; abl. of manner or means by which.

5, 6. **cum . . . premuntur:** notice the mood.

7. **dĭcant:** see note on chap. xii. 28.

in hos . . ., 'precisely the same rights are exercised over them, as masters exercise over their slaves.'

Some edd. insert *quibus* before *in hos*. It makes the sentence more symmetrical (*quibus* answering to *dominis*), but there is no manuscript authority.

8. **dominis,** dat. of possessor.

9. **alterum** (*genus*).

10. **rebus divinis:** dat. after *inter-sunt*. Compounds of *sum* (exc. *pos-sum*) take a dat. See below, l. 25, 26.

11. **procurant:** a technical word, meaning to 'have charge of' or 'superintend' any function. So, *procurator* means one who has charge of (*a*) a law-suit = attorney, (*b*) an estate = bailiff, (*c*) taxes = tax-collector, &c.

religiones, 'matters of religion.'

15. **si quod facinus.** *Quis* (indefinite) has two forms, *quis, quid* and *qui, quod*: the former is substantival (i. e. used when no noun is expressed), the latter adjectival (i. e. belonging to a noun, as here and below, *si qui . . . privatus*).

16 **facta** (*est*).

17. **idem decernunt** (*eam rem*), 'these same (Druids) settle the matter.'

19. **non stetit:** we say 'does not abide by.'

sacrificiis: abl. of separation.

20, 21. **quibus . . . hi,** lit. 'to whom it has thus been interdicted' (impersonal). Say, 'those who are thus banished (or, interdicted) are considered . . .; all avoid them . . .'

22. **his . . . decedunt . . .** *his*, dat. of disadvantage.

23. **ne quid . . . incommodi:** see chap. i. 10, 11, *quid detrimenti*. Why is *accipiant* subj.?

25, 26. **his druidibus:** dat. after *prae-est*. See above, *rebus divinis inter-sunt*.

27. **hoc mortuo:** abl. abs., lit. 'this (man) (being) dead,' i. e. 'on his death.'

> [NOTE.—*Sum* has no present participle. So we get *Balbo consule*, 'Balbus (being) consul,' i. e. 'when Balbus was consul'; cp. chap. xxi. 15, 16.]

28. **si qui:** we should expect *si quis* (see note on line 15), but the two are often interchanged.

si qui excellit, (*is*) **succedit.**

31. **certo tempore:** abl. of time when; 'at a certain (i. e. fixed) season.'

32. **media habetur,** 'is considered the centre.'

> [NOTE.—*regio habetur media* (NOT *mediam*). We know that *sum* takes the same case after it as before it,
>
> '*Caesar est consul* (not *consulem*).'

Remember that many passive verbs, similarly used, must have the same construction. In the above sentence put in *putatur*, *habetur*, *existimatur*, *dicitur esse*, instead of *est*.']

34, 35. **decretis iudiciisque :** dat. after *parent.*

38. **illo :** adverb, 'thither.'

XIV

1. **consuerunt** = *consueverunt.*

[NOTE.—The perfect tense, especially in the passive voice, is often best translated by an English present. The reason is this: *consuerunt* = 'they have accustomed themselves,' i.e. 'they *are* accustomed.' So *mortuus est* = 'he has died,' i.e. 'he *is* dead'; while the present *moritur* = 'he is dying.' The former is a finished, the latter an unfinished action.]

2. **una cum :** 'together with.'

militiae vacationem. The genitive case is often used as a substitute for the ablative : in Greek, which has no ablative, the genitive does nearly all its work. If we turned this phrase into a sentence, we should have *vacant militiā.* We may call it genitive of ablation or the genitive of the thing lacking : 'they enjoy exemption from military service.' **Rerum** is explained in the same way.

6. **e-discere :** stronger than *discere*, 'learn by heart.'

7. **vicenos** not *viginti.* The distributive is used because it refers to each pupil. The accus. expresses duration of time.

9–11. **cum . . . utantur :** concessive, 'though they use . . .'

10. **rationibus,** 'transactions.' Why abl. ?

12, 13. **quod . . . velint.** The more usual *quod* with indic. would boldly assert the reason to be the true one, 'because (it is a fact that) they do not wish . . .' By using the subj. Caesar softens the statement into 'because (as I think) they do not wish . . .'

12–14. **efferri . . . studere :** both depend on *velint.*

13, 14. **neque . . . studere,** 'nor that those who do learn should pay less attention to memory through trusting to writing.'

13. **litteris :** dat. or abl., probably dat., after *confisos.*

14. **memoriae :** dat. after *studere.*

plerisque : dat. of *plerique*, used in plural only.

14–16. **accidit ut . . . remittant :** the regular construction after *accidit. ut . . . remittant* is a noun-clause explaining *quod*, 'for it is usually the result with most men that, under

the protection of writing, their zeal for learning by heart and their memory alike grow slack.'

17, 18. **non interire . . . ad alios:** noun-clause explaining *hoc*.

[NOTE.—*persuadeo tibi* **hoc verum esse,** 'I persuade you **that this is true.**'

But, *persuadeo tibi* **ut hoc facias,** 'I persuade you **to do this.**']

ab aliis . . . ad alios, 'from one to another.'

18. **atque hoc . . .** The order is *putant* (*homines*) *maxime excitari ad virtutem hōc* (abl.), *si metum mortis neglexerint.*

20. **mundi,** 'the universe.'

21. **terrarum,** 'the lands,' i.e. 'the world.'

rerum natura, 'nature.'

XV.

1. **alterum,** '*the* other' or '*the* second.'

cum est = 'whenever'; notice the mood.

2. **aliquod bellum:** see note on chap. xiii. 15. *aliquis*, like *quis*, has two forms.

3. **accidere solebat** = *accidebat.*

uti *not* from *utor*, but another form of *ut.* **Uti . . . inferrent . . . propulsarent,** see chap. xiv. l. 14–16, 'it happened every year that they were either raiding themselves, or repelling a raid.'

4. **illatas . . .:** lit. 'or repelled injuries (when) brought against (them).'

5, 6. **ut . . . est . . . amplissimus, ita . . . plurimos . . . habet:** lit. 'as each man is very rich in . . . , so he has very many . . .' Take the second clause first, and translate, 'and each of them has a band of retainers and clients in his following, whose numbers correspond to the distinction of his birth or estate.'

8. **noverunt,** 'they recognize.' *novi* has a present meaning; its present stem is rarely used.

XVI.

1. **religionibus:** see chap. xiii. 11. Here it means little more than 'superstition.'

2, 3. **qui . . . quique:** the antecedent to each *qui*, namely *ii*, is subject to *immolant . . . vovent . . . utuntur.*

5. **immolaturos** (*esse*). *Vovent* is followed by fut. infin. because it implies a promise.

6. **druidibus:** abl. after *utuntur*; **administris** is in apposition.

quod pro vita . . . The order is: *quod arbitrantur, nisi vita hominis reddatur pro vita hominis, numen de. im. non posse placari.* From *nisi* onward is a sentence expressing their thought, and follows the ordinary rules of Reported Speech.

7. **nisi.** Some MSS. read *non nisi.*

reddatur: *red-do* means, 'I give back that which is due.'

9. **habent instituta sacrificia,** 'they have (regularly) appointed-sacrifices'; quite different from the phrase *instituerunt sacrificia,* 'they have-appointed sacrifices.'

10. **immani magnitudine:** abl. of quality.

11. **contexta viminibus,** 'woven of osiers,' i.e. 'wicker-work'; *viminibus,* abl. of material.

hominibus: abl. after a word expressing fullness. Throughout this chapter, *homines* means 'human beings,' male or female.

12. **quibus succensis,** 'and when fire is applied to them, the victims are enveloped in flames and perish.'

13–15. **supplicia . . . esse:** a similar sentence to that in lines 6–8, above.

15. **gratiora:** i.e. than the punishment of innocent victims.

15, 16. **cum . . . defecit:** whenever. See note on chap. xv. 1.

XVII.

1. **Mercurium.** We must bear in mind that this and the following names are not the Gallic names, but the nearest Latin equivalents.

3. **ferunt,** 'they say.' With *hunc* understand *esse.*

5. **post hunc** (*colunt*).

9. **imperium:** acc. sing.; *caelestium,* gen. plur.

11. **cum:** see note on chap. xv. 1.

proelio: abl. of manner.

bello: cp. *proelio,* above.

12. **ceperint:** perf. subj., as it is a dependent verb in Reported Speech. The exact words of their vow would be: *Ea quae bello ceperimus* (fut. perf.), *tibi immolabimus.*

cum superaverunt: notice the mood. See note on chap. vii. 5, 6.

14, 15. **harum rerum:** gen. of material.

15. **locis.** The preposition is omitted because the word has an epithet.

15, 16. **conspicari licet,** 'you may see'; lit. 'it is lawful (for you) to see.'

16–18. **accidit ut . . . auderet:** see note on chap. xiv. 14–16.

17. **aut capta occultare . . .** 'either to conceal his captures in his home, or to remove them when placed (on the heap).'

apud se = *chez lui.*

XVIII.

1. **prognatos** (*esse*). *Pro-gnatus.* From the root *gen-* we get *gen-us, gi-g(e)n-o, g(e)nascor, g(e)natus.* The two last are usually written *nascor, natus.*

ab Dite: the abl. of origin omits the preposition, except when remote origin is spoken of. *Dis* was the god of the lower world, to which the souls of all men went after death, and from which the souls of the new-born were taken. We must conclude that the Gallic god was not unlike *Dis.*

2. **proditum** (*esse*).

4. **finiunt:** lit. 'they set-boundaries to the spaces (i.e. divisions) of every period, not by the number of its days, but (by the number) of its nights.' We do the same, cp. fortnight (=fourteen nights).

5. **sic . . . ut,** 'in such a way that.'

subsequatur: consecutive subj. See ch. xii. 9–15.

6. **hōc** (abl.) . . . **quod,** 'in this particular . . . that . . .' **hoc:** abl. measure of difference. The order is *quod non patiuntur suos liberos adire ad se palam, nisi,* &c.

7. **nisi cum . . .** 'until they are of age to bear the burden of warfare': lit. 'except when they have grown up, so that they are able . . .' **Adoleverunt:** note the mood.

8. **possint:** consecutive subj.; cp. *subsequatur,* l. 5.

9. **puerili aetate:** abl. of quality.

XIX.

1. **quantas pecunias . . . tantas.** Such sentences can never be translated literally, 'how much property they have received . . . so much they add. . . .' Tr., 'whatever property the men receive . . . , they make a valuation of, and add . . .' **pecunia** originally meant so many head of cattle (*pecus*), which was the usual means of exchange in olden times. In the present passage it is far more probable that the *dos* con-

sisted of property than cash, indeed *aestimatione facta* seems to settle the point.

dotis nomine: a commercial term, 'under the head of dowry.'

4. **ratio,** 'account is kept.' **fructus,** 'interest' or 'profits.'

4, 5. **uter . . . utriusque.** *Uter* (which?) and *uterque* (each) and also *alter* (one *or* the other), are only used in speaking of *two* persons or things: cp. chap. xii. 1, 2.

8. **illustriore,** 'somewhat distinguished': cp. note on chap. ii. 14.

9. **decessit:** cp. chap. vii. 5, 6.

10, 11. **de uxoribus . . . habent,** 'they examine the wives in the same way as slaves,' i.e. by torture.

11, 12. **si compertum est.** The construction is a little loose; say 'if anything is proved.'

12, 13. **excruciatas interficiunt** = *excruciant atque interficiunt.*

13. **pro cultu,** 'considering the (degree of) civilization of the Gauls.'

14, 15. **vivis cordi fuisse:** lit. 'to have been in the heart (*or* at heart) to them (when) alive,' i.e. 'to have been dear to them in life.' *cordi* is best explained as an old locative case: so we find *vesperi, heri, luci.* It is often called a predicative dative.

16. **supra hanc memoriam,** 'before our time'; lit. 'above this recollection.' We have the phrase 'within our recollection.'

17. **quos . . . dilectos esse:** see note on chap. viii. 9.

iustis, 'full,' 'complete,' 'regular.' *iustum iter* = 'a regular (full) day's march'; *iustus exercitus,* 'a complete army' (i.e. with its full number); *iustum proelium,* 'a regular (pitched) battle.'

XX.

1. **quae civitates . . .,** 'those states which.' *commodius*: either 'well' or 'best.' The comparative often has this shade of meaning.

2. **habent legibus sanctum . . .,** 'have it ordained by law that if . . .' (Notice it is 'have it ordained,' not 'have ordained it,' which would be *legibus sanxerunt*: see note on chap. xvi. 9). The order is *uti* (= *ut*), *si quis acceperit quid rumore aut fama a finitimis de re publica, deferat,* &c., 'if any one should hear anything by rumour or report . . . .'

4. **deferat:** the regular word for making a report.

5-8. **quod . . . cognitum est,** 'for it has been found that impulsive, inexperienced persons . . .'

8. (*ea*) **quae visa sunt,** 'what seems good': cp. chap. xxii. 6.

10. **per concilium,** 'in council.'

XXI.

2. **qui . . . praesint,** 'to preside over.' The subjunctive is final, i.e. expresses purpose. The indic. *qui . . . prae-sunt* would mean 'Druids who *do* preside over' (stating a fact).

[NOTE.—There are several ways of expressing purpose. Take the sentence 'I sent the slaves *to prepare* food.'

i. *qui* + subj., *servos misi qui cibum pararent.*

ii. *ut* + subj. (less common), *servos misi ut cibum pararent.*

iii. supine (*-um*) (only after verbs expressing motion), *servos misi cibum paratum.*

iv. *causā* + gerund (or gerundive attraction), *servos misi cibi parandi causa.*

v. *ad* + gerund (or gerundive attraction), *servos misi ad cibum parandum.*

vi. future participle, *servos misi cibum paraturos.*

But NEVER

infinitive, *servos misi cibum parare.*]

rebus divinis: dat. after *prae-sint.*

3. **sacrificiis:** dat. after *student.*

4. **ducunt,** 'they consider.' We have had *habeo* used several times with the same meaning, and followed by *numero*: cf. chap. vi. 7.

5. **opibus:** abl. of manner.

Vulcanum: the Latin name for the God of fire.

6. **ne . . . quidem,** 'not even.' The word to be emphasized is always placed between *ne* and *quidem.* **acceperunt,** 'have heard of.'

7. **in studiis rei militaris,** 'in warlike pursuits.'

8. **ab parvulis,** 'from their childhood.' *Parvulus* is diminutive of *parvus*; so from *rex* we have *regulus.*

qui = *ii qui.*

9, 10. **inter suos,** 'among their (people or relatives)': cp. chap. i. 14.

10. **hōc,** 'in this way.'

13. **cuius rei,** 'and of this.' *cuius* = *et eius.*

14, 15. **pellibus . . . tegimentis** abl. after *utuntur.*

renonum: gen. of material.

15, 16. **magnā corporis parte nudā,** 'the great(er) part of the body (being) naked.' Abl. abs.: cp. *hoc mortuo*, chap. xiii. 27.

[NOTE.—*Corporis* is called the partitive genitive, Part (*magna parte*) of something is mentioned; part of what? *Corporis.* Cp. chap. xxii. 2 below: *maior pars victus.*]

XXII.

1. **agriculturae:** why dative?

eorum: gen. of possessor.

2. **victus:** see note on chap. xxi. 15, 16.

2, 3. **neque quisquam,** 'and none': lit. 'nor any one.' *quisquam* is only used after negatives.

4. **magistratus . . .** The order is *magistratus ac principes attribuunt in singulos annos quantum agri visum est et quo loco* (*visum est*) *gentibus*, &c.

in annos singulos, 'for each year.' *singulos* is the distributive numeral.

5. **gentibus cognationibusque,** 'the tribes and clans'; cp. note on chap. xviii. 1.

qui una coierunt, 'who have united together.' *co-ierunt* from *co-eo.* Some editions read *qui tum una coierunt.*

6. **quantum et quo loco visum est agri:** lit. 'how much of land and in what place it seemed (proper).' Tr., 'they assign as much land as they think proper and where they think proper.' **agri:** partitive gen. after *quantum.* **quo loco** = *quo in loco.* **visum est:** cp. chap. xx. 8.

7. **anno:** abl. answering question 'how long after?' cp. chap. viii. 28.

post: adverb.

alio: adverb, 'elsewhere.'

8. **causas.** These 'reasons' are given in the five following 'final' clauses.

ne, 'that they may not' or 'lest they.'

9. **belli gerendi:** gerundive attraction in the genitive, depending on *studium.*

commutent. We say 'exchange something *for* something else.' Latin uses the accus. and abl. It does not matter, either in English or in Latin, which you use for the thing you give up and which for the thing you take to. The sense has to decide.

10. **latos fines parare studeant,** 'desire to acquire extensive estates.' This and the next clause must have come home to Caesar as he wrote them. This very thing had

been the ruin of Italy during the past hundred years and more.

11, 12. **ad frigora** . . . = *ad frigora vitanda atque ad aestus vitandos*; gerundive attraction.

12, 13. **ne qua cupiditas** . . . , 'that no love of money.' **qua**, indefinite adjective.

14. **nascuntur**: if this were a reason given by the Germans we should have *nascantur* (subj.). The indic. shows that it is a statement inserted by the writer.

15, 16. **cum** . . . **videat**: causal subj., 'when each sees . . . .' *suus* and *quisque* often come together, and (in prose) always in this order.

15. **cum potentissimis** stands for *cum opibus potentissimorum*. This shortening of a phrase is called 'brachylogy'; cp. chap. xxvii. 2.

XXIII.

1. **civitatibus.** It must be remembered that the *civitates* referred to in this chapter were not 'States' in the sense that we now give the word. So too with *regiones* and *pagi* below. The words are used with quite a loose and indefinite meaning.

quam latissime, 'as widely as possible.' *quam* with superl. regularly has this meaning; cp. *quam plurimi*.

3. **proprium** (*esse*), 'to be the true mark of.'

3, 4. **expulsos** . . . **cedere**: lit. 'their neighbours being driven out . . . to forsake'; say 'that their neighbours should be driven out of and forsake their land.'

4. **neque quemquam**: cp. note on chap. xxii. 2, 3.

5. **hōc**, 'in this way,' 'thus'; cp. chap. xviii. 6.

6, 7. **cum** . . . **infert**, 'when a State is either repelling an invasion or invading'; notice the mood.

8. **qui** . . . **praesint**: final subj.; cp. chap. xxi. 2. **bello**, what case, and why?

ut . . . **habeant**: a consecutive subj.; 'are chosen to direct that war (with such authority) that . . . .'

13. **cuiusque**: is one word, from *quisque*.

fiunt: *fio* is regularly used as the passive of *facio* in the pres., fut., and imperf. tenses. 'Acts of robbery which take place beyond the borders of each state involve no disgrace.'

14. **iuventutis** . . . **causa**: another example of gerundive attraction.

15. **ubi quis**: not a common phrase; **quis ex principibus**, 'any of the chiefs.'

16. **dixit** is primary, 'has said.' This is proved by th primary subj. tenses which follow.

velint, profiteantur: subjs. in Reported Speech. Th chieftain's words were '*Ego dux ero,* (*vos*) *qui sequi vultis, pro fitemini*' (imperat.), '(and that) those who wish to follov (him) may volunteer.'

[NOTE.—In this speech there are two principal clauses *ego ero, vos profitemini.* When this Direct Speech is mad to depend on *dixit,* thus becoming Reported Speech, *er* becomes infinitive (same tense), as stating a *fact*; *pro fitemini* is a command, and therefore goes into th subjunctive.]

19. **qui ex his** = *ii ex his qui.*

19, 20. **secuti non sunt:** merely an alteration of *non secut sunt.*

20. **numero ducuntur:** cp. chap. xxi. 4.

21. **omnium rerum fides,** 'credit in all matters'; **his,** dat of disadvantage.

22. **fas,** 'right,' in the sight of the gods; *ius,* 'right,' in the sight of men. The corresponding adjectives are *fastus iustus*; their opposites are *nĕfastus, iniustus.*

qui quacumque de causa: lit. 'who from whatever cause,' i.e. 'those who from any cause.'

24. **his:** with *patent,* is dat. of advantage. We mus understand *cum his* with *communicatur.*

XXIV.

1–4. **superarent . . . inferrent . . . mitterent:** subjs. witl a kind of consecutive meaning. 'There was a time wher . . .' implies 'there was a time of such a kind that . . .'

1. **virtute:** abl. expressing 'the point in which' a state ment is true.

4. **itaque,** 'thus,' 'for example.'

5–8. **Hercyniam . . . Eratostheni . . . Volcae Tectosages** Vocabulary of Names.

6. **fama notam,** 'known by report.'

8. **occupaverunt:** see note on chap. xii. 13.

11. **opinionem,** 'reputation for . . .'

11–15. **nunc quod . . . largitur,** 'at the present day, whereas the Germans continue in the same . . . as before, and use the same . . . , while in the case of the Gauls their nearness to the Provinces and their acquaintance with the-products-of-countries-beyond-the-sea (*transmarinarum rerum*) contribute

greatly to their resources and necessities, (the result is that) . . .'

11. **quod** introduces three reasons for the statement contained in the last two lines of the chapter: (1) *in eādem . . . permanent*, (2) *eodem . . . utuntur*, (3) *Gallis . . . largītur*.

12. **qua ante:** understand *erant*, lit. 'in which (they used to be) formerly': translate 'as formerly.' (The MSS. read *qua Germani*. It seems necessary either to insert some such word as *ante*, or perhaps to omit *qua*, as some editions do.)

13. **victu . . . cultu.** Why abl.?

Gallis: dat. of recipient with *largītur*. The subject is *propinquitas et notitia*. Notice they have a singular verb.

provinciarum: i. e. *Gallia cis-Alpina* and *Gallia trans-Alpina* (or *Gallia Narbonensis*).

14. **transmarinarum rerum:** objective gen.

[NOTE.—Genitives are called objective when they depend upon a noun which contains some verb-notion, to which the genitive supplies the object. Thus *transmarinarum rerum notitia* is equivalent to *transmarinas res noverunt*.]

16, 17. **ne se quidem:** cp. note on chap. xxi. 6.

17. **virtute:** cp. note on l. 1 above.

XXV.

2. **iter:** acc. expressing space covered.

novem dierum: gen. of quality or description.

expedito, 'for a man lightly equipped.'

4. **noverunt:** the perfect of *nosco* has a present meaning. Cp. note on chap. xv. 8.

5, 6. **recta regione,** 'parallel to,' lit. 'in a straight line.'

7, 8. **diversis ab flumine regionibus:** lit. 'in lines turning away from the river,' i. e. 'in a different direction from the river.'

9. **neque quisquam est . . .,** 'and there is no (inhabitant) of this (part of) Germany.'

10–12. **qui . . . dicat, . . . aut** (*qui*) . . . **acceperit,** 'of such experience as may say . . . or as may have heard,' i. e. 'who can say . . . or who has heard . . .' The subjunctives are consecutive.

10. **adisse** = *ad-ivisse*.

11. **cum . . . processerit:** concessive subj., 'though he has . . .'

12. **oriatur:** indirect question, depending on *acceperit*.

multaque: *multă generă*, subject to *nasci*: **in eā,** in it (i.e. the forest).

13, 14. **quae visa non sint,** 'such as are not seen,' consecutive subjunctive. *Quae visa non sunt* would mean 'which (as a fact) are not seen.'

14. **ex quibus . . .,** 'such of these as differ most . . . are the following (*haec*).'

14, 15. **quae differant . . . videantur,** subjs. for the same reason as *visa sint.*

15. (*maxime*) **memoriae prodenda,** 'most worthy of record,' lit. 'meet-to-be-handed-over to memory.' *Maxime* goes with *differant* and with *prodenda.*

XXVI.

1. **bos cervi figurā,** 'the reindeer.' *Bos* is used in Latin in a much wider sense than 'ox' or 'cow' in English, i.e. *Luca bos* means an 'elephant.' The reindeer used, in the prehistoric ages, and probably in Caesar's time, to be common throughout the greater part of Europe, though now it is found only in the extreme north.

figura: abl. of quality or description. The epithet which this abl. requires (see note on chap. vii. 14, 15) is supplied here by the genitive *cervi.*

media fronte: the middle of the forehead; see note on chap. iii. 9.

2. **unum cornu.** Caesar was imposed upon.

3. **his cornibus:** abl. of comparison. substituted for *quam haec cornua.*

XXVII.

1. **alces:** the elk.

2. **capris,** 'to (that of) goats'; dat. after *consimilis. Similis* and *consimilis* are followed by gen. or dat., e.g. *similis patris* or *similis patri. capris = caprorum figurae*, brachylogy. Cp. chap. xxii. 15.

3, 4. **mutilae sunt cornibus,** 'mutilated in respect of horns,' i.e. 'without horns.' Caesar cannot have seen a full-grown specimen. **cornibus,** abl. of respect.

4. **crura sine nodis articulisque** makes us doubt whether Caesar ever saw an elk at all—in the day-time.

5, 6. **si quo . . . casu,** 'if through any (mis)chance they are overthrown and fall'; abl. of cause.

9. **est animadversum:** impersonal, or rather *quo . . . consuerint* is subject.

10. **quo . . . consuerint:** indirect question. *consuerint = consueverint.*

11, 12. **omnes . . . arbores:** object to *subruunt aut accīdunt.*

ab radīcibus, 'at the roots'; cp. chap. xxviii. 14.

accīdunt = *ad-caedunt.* This word must be carefully distinguished from *accĭdo = ad-cădo.*

12. **tantum ut:** lit. '(only) so much that the highest appearance of them standing is left.' Tr. 'just so far that their resemblance to standing trees is not spoilt.'

13. **relinquatur,** consecutive subj.

huc = *ad has arbores.*

consuetudine: we should expect *ex consuetudine,* abl. of manner, practically an adverb.

15. **concīdunt** = *con-cădunt.*

XXVIII.

1. **uri.** This animal is now extinct. The skeleton of an animal with enormous horns, found in the drift deposits in Germany, France, and this country, is supposed to be the remains of the *urus.*

2, 3. **magnitudine . . . specie . . . colore . . . figura:** see note on *virtute,* chap. xxiv. 1.

4. **homini . . . ferae:** dat. after *parcunt.*

6. **captos interficiunt** = *capiunt atque interficiunt.* The subject, of course, is *Germani* understood.

7. **qui,** as so often, = 'those who.'

8, 9. **relatis . . . cornibus . . . ferunt** = *cornua referunt . . . et ferunt.*

9. **quae sint testimonio:** final subj.; lit. 'which may be for a proof.' We should say 'to serve as proof.'

testimonio: dat. of purpose.

10, 11. **sed . . . possunt.** The subject is *uri* again. 'But not even when caught quite-young (*parvuli*) can they become accustomed to . . .'

[NOTE.—Remember, 'I can do it' must be transformed into 'I am-able to-do it,' before you put into Latin *id facere possum.*]

13. **cornibus.** Here again we come across an example of brachylogy. Strictly speaking, the sentence should be, 'The size . . . and shape and appearance of their horns differs greatly from [the size and shape and appearance of] the horns . . .' Cp. chaps. xxii. 15, xxvii. 2.

Haec: i. e. the horns.

14. **ab labris,** 'at the rim'; cp. chap. xxvii. 11

XXIX.

1–13. **Caesar . . .** The outline of this long sentence is as follows (the main thread of the sentence is in ordinary type):—

	Caesar,	*postquam . . . comperit Suebos . . . recepisse,*
	veritus inopiam . . .	(*quod . . . student,*)
	constituit . . .;	
sed,		(a) *ne . . . tolleret . . . atque*
		(b) *ut . . . tardaret,*
	reducto exercitu,	
	partem . . .,	(*quae . . . contingebat,*) . . .
	. . . rescindit,	
atque	. . . constituit,	
-que	. . . ponit,	
-que	. . . firmat.	

Ubios: here an adjective.

4. **culturae.** Why dative?

5–7. **ne . . . tolleret, ut . . . tardaret:** final subjs.

6. **reditus:** gen. case of a noun, *not* a past part. pass. (*red-eo* is intransitive, and therefore cannot have one).

barbaris: dat. of disadvantage.

9. **pedum ducentorum:** gen. of quality. So too *quatuor tabulatorum*, and *cohortium duodecim* below.

10. **extremo ponte,** 'at the (further) end *of the* bridge'; see note on chap. iii. 9.

11, 12. **pontis tuendi:** gerundive attraction.

13. **ei loco praesidioque:** dat. after the *prae-* of *praefecit*; see note on chap. iii. 12.

14. **adulescentem:** either 'the younger' (as we say, Mr. Brown, junior), or 'a young man.' Caesar always had a number of young nobles in his camp, apprentices in the art of war, whom he often refers to as *adulescentes*.

14–24. **ipse,** &c.: another long sentence. The outline is as follows:—

Ipse,		*cum . . . inciperent,*
. . . profectus per . . .		(*quae est maxima . . .,*
		atque pertinet . . .,
		-que . . . patet),
Basilum . . .	(i) praemittit,	*si quid . . . posset,*
	(ii) monet	*ut . . . prohibeat* (*ne . . . fiat*),
(Basilo)	(iii) dicit	*sese . . . subsequi.*

15, 16. **bellum Ambiorigis,** 'the war against Ambiorix'; cp. chap. v. 2.

17. **totius Galliae maxima,** 'the greatest (of the forests) in the whole of Gaul.' Another instance of brachylogy; cp. chap. xxii. 15. The genitive is partitive.

18, 19. **milibus quingentis:** abl. of comparison after *amplius.*

21, 22. **praemittit, si quid . . . posset,** '(to see) if he could gain any advantage (lit. profit aught) by a rapid march and a stroke of luck.' The subjunctive is a kind of indirect question. **Quid:** adverbial accus.; cp. chap. xiii. 3, 4.

22, 23. **monet ut . . . prohibeat.** *Moneo,* being practically a verb of 'commanding,' like *impero,* takes *ut* with subj.

23, 24. **ne . . . fiat:** final subj. The order is: *ne qua significatio adventus* (gen.) *eius* (his, i.e. Basilus') *fiat procul.*

24. **subsequi:** we might expect *subsecuturum esse,* 'says that he will follow.' But we use present-future (as it is called) in English, 'says that he himself is following without delay.'

XXX.

4. **quo in loco** = *in eum locum in quo.*

5, 6. **multum potest,** 'is mighty'; a similar phrase to *quid . . . posset* in chap. xxix. 21, 22.

cum . . . tum, 'both . . . and (especially).' In this phrase the circumstance which one wishes to emphasize is put after *tum.*

7. **nam sicut.** This sentence is in two halves, forming a comparison, (*a*) 'just as . . ., (*b*) even so . . .' The outline is as follows:—

(*a*) sicut accidit . . . *ut* (i) . . . *incideret*
(ii) *-que . . . videretur prius-,*
(*quam . . . afferretur*)
(*b*) sic fuit magnae fortunae *ipsum* (*omni . . . comprehensis*) *effugere mortem.*

7, 8. **magno accidit casu ut . . . incideret,** 'just as it fell out by a great chance that he (Basilus) fell in with him (Ambiorix) . . .' *Accĭdit, cāsus,* and *incĭderet* are all formed from *cădo,* 'fall,' or 'befall'; it is the regular word to use in speaking of chance.

8, 9. **prius . . . quam,** 'before.' It may be written either as one word, or as two.

[NOTE.—'Before' is a stumbling-block, because in English it may be (i) a preposition, (ii) an adverb, (iii) a

conjunction, but in Latin (and in French) we cannot always use *ante* or *prius* (and *avant*) alone. For instance:—

i. I came *before* you.
Ante *te adveni.*
(*Fr.*) *Je suis arrivé* avant *toi.*

ii. He came yesterday; I came *before* (i. e. previously).
Heri venit ille, ego antea.
(*Fr.*) *Il est arrivé hier, et moi* auparavant.

iii. I came *before* you departed.
Adveni antequam (*or*, priusquam) *discessisti.*
(*Fr.*) *Je suis arrivé* avant que *vous étiez parti.*]

8, 10. **prius-quam . . . afferretur,** 'before any report or message *could be* brought in.' The indic. *prius-quam . . . allatum est* would mean simply 'before the news *was* brought.' See note on chap. iii. 3, 4.

eius adventus, 'his (i. e. Basilus') arrival.'

9. **videretur** is the second of the two verbs depending on *accidit ut*, *incideret* being the first: it is a true passive.

10. **magnae fuit fortunae,** 'it was a great piece of good fortune.' *Fortunae* is the same kind of genitive as, *est* pueri *parentibus parere*, 'it is the (duty) of a boy to obey his parents.' It is really a development of the 'genitive of the possessor'—*Caesaris equus*, 'Caesar's horse.'

13. **sed hōc quoque . . . quod:** lit. 'but by this (reason) also it happened, that . . .,' i.e. 'but he escaped for this further reason, that . . .' **Hōc** is abl., and is answered by *quod*, &c.

13, 14. **aedificio circumdato silvā,** 'his house being surrounded by a wood.' We can say either *circumdo aedificium* (acc.) *silvā* (abl.) or *circumdo silvam* (acc.) *aedificio* (dat.).

14. **ut sunt.** *Ut* with indic. = 'as' or 'when'; never = 'in order that' or 'so that.'

15. **vitandi aestūs:** gerundive attraction. So *subeundum periculum* and *vitandum* (*periculum*) below.

plerumque: adverb.

19 **fugientem** = 'him flying,' i.e. 'the fugitive.'

XXXI.

1. **iudicio-ne.** The order is *dubium est -ne* (=*utrum*) *Ambiorix non conduxerit suas copias iudicio* (*quod . . .*), *an exclusus*, &c.

iudicio, 'deliberately.'

proelio: abl. of place where.

dimicandum (*esse*), lit. 'that it ought-to-be-fought.'

2. **existimarit** = *existimaverit*, perf. subj. The subj. shows that the sentence only gives Ambiorix' possible reason for not collecting his forces. It is therefore 'Reported Thought.'

[NOTE.—I do not know *whether* this tale is true *or* false. *Nescio* **utrum** *vera* **an** *falsa sit haec fabula.* Latin places its introducing words *utrum . . . an* just in front of the words that are contrasted, *vera* and *falsa*. English (as you can see) is not so particular.]

2, 3. **an tempore exclusus.** The points contrasted are—

-ne (= *utrum*) (i) *iudicio,*
an (ii) *tempore exclusus*
et
repentino . . . prohibitus.

4. **reliquum exercitum,** 'the rest *of the* army': see note on chap. iii. 9.

7. **continentes,** 'continuous,' 'uninterrupted.' So *continentes terrae*, 'uninterrupted lands': i.e. 'mainland,' 'continent.'

8. **qui.** The antecedent is *hi*.

Oceano: dat. after a word expressing nearness.

9. **insulis.** The preposition is sometimes omitted if the *place where* is also the *means by which* something takes place.

9, 10. **efficere consuerunt,** 'usually formed.' **consuerunt** = *consueverunt.*

12. **Eburonum**: partitive genitive.

una cum, 'together with.'

13, 14. **cum . . . non posset**: causal subj.

14, 15. **omnibus precibus detestatus,** 'after cursing Ambiorix by all his gods'; lit. 'having cursed Ambiorix with every prayer.' *detestor* means 'I curse (something), calling the gods to witness.'

15, 16. **qui . . . fuisset,** 'because he had been,' causal subj.

XXXII.

3. **oratum,** 'to pray,' supine in *-um* expressing purpose after a verb of motion: see note on chap. xxi. 2. Their *prayer* was:—

i. *ne . . . duceret,*
ii. *ne-ve . . . iudicaret*;

and was followed by the *statement*—

i. *nihil se . . . cogita(vi)sse,*
ii. *nulla . . . misisse.*

The passage is therefore a Reported Request, followed by a Reported Statement, and it follows the ordinary rules.

6. **Ambiorigi,** 'for (the benefit of) Ambiorix.' 'To Ambiorix' would be *ad Ambiorigem.*

7. **explorata re.** Do not translate *re* by 'thing.' Say 'the matter,' 'the question.'

8. **si qui ad eos.** The order is: *Imperavit ut, si qui Eburones convenissent ex fuga ad eos, reducerentur ad se.*

ex fuga, 'in (the course of) their flight.' So *ex itinere impetum faciunt,* 'they attack while on the march.'

10. **se violaturum** (*esse*) **negavit,** 'declared that he would not.' Caesar's actual words were: *Si ita feceritis, fines vestros ego non violabo.*

12. **Aduatucam.** Why not *in Aduatucam?*

15, 16. **cum . . . tum**: see note on chap. xxx. 5, 6.

15. **reliquis rebus,** 'on other accounts.'

16. **probarat** = *probaverat.*

17. **ut . . . sublevaret:** after *probarat.* The subj. is final.

18. **praesidio impedimentis:** a common double dative; lit. '*for* a guard *to* the baggage-train.' The first is a dative expressing purpose, the second the dative of the recipient.

19, 20. **conscriptas . . . traduxerat:** cp. chap. i. 7, 15, and note on chap. xxviii. 6.

21. **praeficit** takes accus. and dat.: see note on chap. iii. 12.

XXXIII.

2. **ad Oceanum versus:** *versus,* an adverb, is often added to such phrases; 'in the direction of the Ocean.'

4, 5. **ad eam regionem . . . depopulandam:** gerundive attraction.

6, 7. **ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam.** The Scheldt does not now flow into the Meuse, but its eastern arm, the East Schelde, may have done so in Caesar's time. It has been proposed, unnecessarily, to read *Sabim* (the Sambre).

7. **extremasque partes:** a second accus. depending on *ad.*

8. **profectum** (*esse*).

9, 10. **post diem septimum,** 'on the seventh day after,' 'within seven days.' This may also be expressed *septimo post die, post* in this case being an adverb.

10. **sese reversurum** (*esse*): accus. and future infin., because *confirmat* implies a promise.

quam ad diem: notice the change of gender. *Dies* is usually masc., but it is often fem. in the sense of 'an appointed time.' But four lines below it is masculine with this meaning.

11. **deberi,** 'would be due,' lit. 'was due.'

13. **hortatur.** The order is—(*ut*) *revertantur ad eum diem, si possint* . . . *Ut* is frequently omitted after *hortor*.

commodo: abl. of attendant circumstances; cp. chap. xliv. 2.

14. (*ut*) . . . **revertantur**: *hortor* introduces a Reported Command, which accounts for the mood of *revertantur*, and also of *possint*. Caesar's actual words would be, *si . . . poteritis, . . . revertimini* (imperat.).

14-16. **ut . . . possent,** 'so that they might . . .' Notice that the sequence changes to the historic. *Possint, revertantur* show the more immediate wishes of Caesar; *possent* his subsequent plans.

XXXIV.

1. **ut,** with indic.: see note on chap. xxx. 14.

2, 3. **quod . . . defenderet** = 'such that it could . . .' Consecutive subj.

3. **in omnes partes dispersa,** 'scattered in all directions.'

4-6. **ubi cuique aut valles . . . offerebat, consederat**: lit. 'where to each man either a valley . . . afforded any hope . . ., he had settled'; i.e. 'each man had settled wherever . . .'

4. **valles** is nom. sing., another form of *vallis*.

5. **spem . . . aliquam**: take together.

6. **vicinitatibus,** 'to the neighbourhood' (i.e. to the men who lived in the neighbourhood). Our phrase is exactly the same, except that we do not use the plural.

7, 8. **in summā exercitūs tuendā**: gerundive attraction. *Summa* is a noun, 'the main body.'

8. **nullum . . .**: lit. 'for no danger was able to happen to (them) united from frightened and scattered (men)'; i.e. 'there could be no danger to a united force from cowed and scattered bands.'

10, 11. **quae tamen . . . res**: *quae = et ea*. 'and yet this circumstance.'

11. **ex parte,** 'to a certain extent.'

12. **longius,** 'some distance.'

12–14. **evocabat . . . prohibebant.** The imperf. is used to show that this was frequently taking place.

13. **incertis . . . itineribus**: abl. of cause.

13, 14. **confertos adire prohibebant,** 'prevented them from approaching in large bodies.'

14. **negotium confici**: we should express this actively, 'if he desired to finish the business and extirpate the miscreants, he must send out a number of detachments and divide his men.'

stirpem = the whole stock (or root).

15, 16. **vellet . . . erant**: In conditional sentences where a gerundive occurs in the apodosis (as here) the indicative takes the place of the more regular subjunctive.

di-mittendae, di-ducendi: *di-* or *dis-* implies separation: *disponit castella*, 'he plants forts *at intervals*.'

16. **plures**: comparative = a considerable number of; cp. *longius*, above.

17. **manipulos**: see Introduction, p. 12. Each *maniple* had its own standard.

17–19. **vellet . . . erat.** Here the above does not apply. *Locus erat praesidio* is a shortened way of saying *reperiret locum esse praesidio.*

19. **praesidio barbaris**: double dative; cp. *praesidio impedimentis*, ch. xxxii. 18.

19, 20. **neque . . . singulis deerat audacia**: 'nor were individuals lacking in the daring to set secret ambush and so surround stragglers.'

20. **singulis**: dat. after *de-sum*; see chap. xiii. 10.

dispersos circumveniendi: gerundive attraction not used here because the genitive pl., *dispers*orum *circumveniend*orum, would sound very heavy.

21. **ut in . . .**: 'considering the nature of the difficulties'; lit. 'as in difficulties of that kind.'

quantum diligentiā . . .: lit. 'how far it was able to be foreseen by carefulness, it was foreseen, that something should rather be omitted in damaging . . ., than that it should be damaged (i.e. damage should be done) together with (i.e. at the expense of) any loss of soldiers.' All the verbs (except *ardebant*) are used impersonally.

22, 23. **ut . . . praetermitteretur**: final subj., as is also *potius . . . quam* (*ut*) *noceretur.* The second *ut* must be supplied.

27–30. **ut . . . periclitetur, ut . . . tollatur**: final subjs.

29. **facinore.** In the late autumn of B.C. 54 Indutiomarus, a chief of the Treveri, had induced Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, chiefs of the Eburones, to stir up their people and their neighbours the Aduatuci, and fall upon and destroy a legion and a half, under the command of Sabinus and Cotta, which were wintering in their country.

XXXV.

3. **reverti**: *reverto* and *revertor* both mean 'I return,' i.e. 'go back.' Cp. chap. xxxiii. 14.

4. **quantum . . . fortuna possit**: see chap. xxx. 5, 6.

4, 5. **possit . . . afferat:** indirect questions.

5. **cognosci potuit,** 'it was able to be known,' i.e. 'you could learn.'

7. **quae . . . afferret:** consecutive subj. *quae* = *talis ut*, 'such that it brought (or caused).'

8, 9. **diripi . . . evocari** is, of course, Reported Speech.

9. **ultro** = 'beyond what might be expected,' 'actually,' 'even.'

11. **Rheno:** dat. after a word expressing nearness.

receptos (*esse*) **ex fuga:** see note on chap. xxxii. 8.

13. **navibus ratibusque:** abl. of the 'instrument' or 'means by which' something is done.

triginta milibus passuum: abl. of the 'amount of difference.'

[Note.—*Mille*, 'a thousand,' is an adjective (indeclinable); *mille equites*, 'a thousand horsemen.' *Milia* (less commonly *millia*) is a noun, and must therefore be followed by a genitive; *tria milia equitum*, 'three thousand(s of) horsemen.']

[Note.—A Roman mile was *mille passus*, a thousand paces. *Passus* was the distance from where the heel left the ground to where the *same* heel was again set down. One *passus* was equivalent to five feet (*pĕdes*), and one foot (*pes*) was 11·65 English inches. Thus we get the following table:—

1 *pes* = 11·65 inches.

5 *pedes* (1 *passus*) = 4 ft. 10·25 in.

1000 *passus* = 4854 ft. = 1618 yards,

or 142 yards less than an English mile.]

14. **erat perfectus** = *perfectus erat.*

15. **relictum** (*erat*).

16. **ex fuga dispersos:** see above, *receptos ex fuga*, and chap. xxxii. 8.

16, 17. **magno numero.** Why abl.?

17. **cuius:** objective gen. after *cupidissimi.*

18. **praedā:** abl. of cause.

19. **morantur:** *not* from *morior.*

20. **quibus in locis sit.** Why subj.?

21. **profectum** (*esse Caesarem*).

longius, 'some considerable distance.'

24. **quibus licet esse fortunatissimis:** lit. 'to whom it is permissible to be most fortunate.' We should say, 'when you might be . . .' Notice the case of *fortunatissimis.*

25. **tribus horis** and **Aduatucam.** Why these cases?

27. **praesidii tantum est . . .:** lit. 'there is (only) so

much of garrison that not even the wall is able to be manned.' Say, 'the garrison is so small that . . .' For *tantum praesidii* see chap. i. 10, 11, *quid detrimenti*.

28, 29. **possit . . . audeat:** consecutive subjs.

28. **quisquam.** This word can only be used after a negative.

30, 31. **quam nacti erant praedam.** The antecedent, *praedam*, has been taken into the relative clause. This is quite common. 'Leave the plunder which . . .'

32. **eodem duce.** Why abl.?

XXXVI.

1–14. We may analyse this long sentence thus :—

Cicero, *qui* (a) . . . *continuisset*,
    ac (b) . . . *passus esset*,
septimo die, (i) diffidens *Caesarem fidem serraturum* (*esse*)
            quod (a) . . . *audiebat*,
            neque (b) . . . *afferebatur*,
    simul (ii) permotus eorum vocibus *qui* . . . *appellabant*
            (*si* . . . *liceret*),
        (iii) exspectans nullum casum *quo* . . . *posset*,
quinque cohortes mittit.

1–4. **qui . . . continuisset . . . passus esset,** 'though he . . .,' concessive. But do not translate 'Cicero, though he . . .'; say 'Though Cicero . . .'

3. **ne calonem quidem quemquam,** 'not even a single camp-follower.' Notice the position of *calonem*; cp. chap. xxi. 6.

5, 6. **diffidens Caesarem servaturum** (*esse*), 'not being confident that . . .' Caesar had promised to return on the seventh day (chap. xxxiii).

6. **longius** (*eum*) **progressum** (*esse*): see note on chap. xxxv. 21.

7. **neque ullă** = *et quod nulla.*

9, 10. **si quidem . . . lĭcēret:** subj. as being part of their objection (Reported Speech).

10. **nullvm eius,** &c.: lit. '(and) anticipating no mishap of that kind by which it was able to be injured (*offendi posset*), within three miles.' Tr., 'anticipating no such mishap as a blow being struck at him within the space of three miles, in the face of nine legions and a powerful force of cavalry, while the enemy was scattered and almost annihilated.'

14. **frumentatum:** supine, expressing purpose after a verb of motion; cp. chaps. xxi. 2 (note), xxxii. 3.

quas inter: two-syllable prepositions frequently follow their nouns.

16. **ex quibus** (*ii*) **qui**, 'of whom those who . . .'

16, 17. **hoc spatio dierum**: i. e. within the last seven days.

17, 18. **sub vexillo.** The regular colours of the legion were the *signa*. The *vexilla* were special ensigns, under which were grouped any men not included in the regular cohorts. These discharged invalids did not belong to the legion and a half under Cicero's command, and were therefore placed, temporarily, under a *vexillum* until they could rejoin their own legion.

18. **una**: together.

20. **facta potestate**, 'permission being given.'

XXXVII.

1. **casu**: *casus*, the noun of *cădo*, means literally 'a falling,' so 'a falling-out (of events),' 'condition of things.' Take *hoc ipso* with *casu* as well as with *tempore*, 'at this very time and under these very conditions.'

3. **ab decumanā porta.** This gate, the main entrance to the camp, was placed on the side farthest from the enemy; on the opposite side was the *porta praetoria*. *Ab* means 'on the side of,' just as it does below, *ab ea parte*.

4. **obiectis**: *ob-* signifies '(lying) in the way'; so *oppositis* in the previous chapter.

prius . . . quam: to be taken together.

5. **appropinquarent**: see note on chap. iii. 3, 4. Here, as in chap. iv. 3, we might have expected the indicative.

castris: dat. after *appropinquarent*.

5, 6. **qui mercatores** = *mercatores qui*; see note on chap. xxxv. 30, 31.

6. **tenderent**: understand *tentoria* or *carbasa*, 'were pitching their tents.'

recipiendi sui: gerundive attraction; *se* (*sese*), *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, though declined in the singular only, have both singular and plural meaning.

7. **haberent**: consecutive subj.

8. **cohors in statione** = *cohors quae in statione erat*, 'the cohort on guard (outpost duty).'

9. **circumfunduntur**: lit. 'are poured round,' i.e. 'surround,' *not* 'are surrounded.'

9, 10. **si quem . . . possent**, 'to see if they could'; cp. chap. xxix. 21, 22. *Possent* shows that *circumfunduntur* is historic present.

12. **trepidatur:** impersonal, 'the whole camp is in confusion.' **Castris**, local ablative.

14. **ferantur . . . conveniat:** indirect questions depending on *prōvĭdent.*

15. **capta** (esse).

16, 17. **deleto exercitu . . . venisse:** translate, 'the barbarians have annihilated . . . and have come as conquerors.'

17. **plerique:** one word.

17, 18. **novas ex loco religiones,** 'picture to themselves novel superstitions as belonging to the spot,' i. e. they thought the camp was pitched in an unlucky spot.

19. **occiderint:** perf. subj., showing that it is the reported thought of the men. Tr. 'who, they recollected, had fallen.'

20. **confirmatur opinio barbaris,** 'the barbarians are confirmed in their belief.'

21. **ut . . . audierant:** notice the mood.

22. **perrumpere nituntur:** *nitor* is more commonly followed by *ut* and subj.

23, 24. **ne . . . dimittant:** subj. after *adhortantur.*

XXXVIII.

2. **primum pilum duxerat,** 'had commanded the first *pilus*' (or senior company). See Introduction, p. 14.

ad Caesarem, 'under Caesar.'

4. **cibo:** abl. after *caruerat. Careo*, being a word implying 'separation,' is always followed by this case.

4, 5. **suae atque omnium saluti:** *suae* is of course dative: 'fearful for his own and the general safety.'

[Note.—It must be remembered that the possessive adjectives *meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus* have the force of a *genitive* case. Here, *suae saluti* = *Baculi* (gen.) *saluti.*

Remembering this, we shall better understand the idioms

i. *Hoc meā refert,* 'this concerns me,' where, if we substitute a noun for *meā*, we get *hoc Caesaris refert.*

ii. *Meā unius operā urbs servată est,* 'the city was saved by my help alone'; *unius* agrees with the genitive implied in *meā*, as we shall see at once if we put a noun in its place.

Caesaris unius operā . . .]

10. **relinquit animus Sextium,** 'Sextius faints.'

11. **aegre per manus,** 'he is dragged (or, passed) from hand to hand, and saved with difficulty.'

13. **tantum ut,** 'so far that . . .' *audeant . . . praebeant,* consecutive subjs.

14. **speciem defensorum,** 'an appearance of defence.' *Defensorum* is 3rd decl. from *defensor.*

XXXIX.

1. **milites:** i.e. the *quinque cohortes* that had been sent out to forage.

2. **exaudiunt,** 'catch the sound of . . . ,' i. e. 'the uproar reaches their ears.'

3. **sit:** why subj. ? In sentences like this it is better not to translate literally 'they recognize in how great peril,' &c. Say, 'they recognize the gravity of the peril.'

4. **quae . . . recipiat:** consecutive subj.

5. **usus militaris:** objective gen. after *imperiti.*

5, 6. **tribunum militum centurionesque:** see Introd. pp. 13 and 14.

6, 7. **quid . . . praecipiatur, exspectant,** 'they wait to see what directions they will give.' *praecipiatur,* why subj.? cp. chap. xxix. 21, 22.

8. **quin . . . perturbetur,** 'as not to be . . .' *quin = qui non.* The subj. is consecutive.

9. **oppugnatione:** abl. of separation.

10. **longius:** see note on chap. xxxv. 21.

XL.

3, 6. **alii . . . alii,** 'some . . . others.' *censent* must be taken with each. In the first case **ut . . . perrumpant** depends on *censent.* In the second *ut . . . consistant atque . . . ferant* again depends on *censent* (understood).

4, 5. **quoniam . . . sint:** subj. because it is the reported thought of the soldiers, cp. chap. i. 5, 6.

6. **ceciderit:** perf. subj. This sentence also gives the reported thought of the men, but depends on *confidunt.*

at, 'yet.'

9. **profectos** (*esse*).

docuimus: cp. chap. xxxvi. 17, 18.

10. **Gaio Trebonio, equite Romano.** This man must not be confused with the Trebonius mentioned in chap. xxxiii. The Roman 'knight' was a distinct class of the community at Rome, just as we speak of the landed gentry, the commercial classes, and so on. They were wealthy persons, at one time not members of the Senate, though they were subsequently admitted. Nearly all the revenues passed through their hands, and they furnished the *iudices* for the courts of

law. Originally an *eques* 'knight' was one who could afford to provide himself with a horse in time of war, and so become one of the cavalry. But this state of things had long since passed away. The wealthy had for many years paid some-one else to serve in their place.

11. **eis**: dat. after *prae-positus*, cp. chap. iii. 12.

12. **ad unum omnes**, 'to a man.'

13. **eodem impetu**: abl. of attendant circumstances.

14. **virtute**: abl. of instrument, or 'means by which,' cp. chap. xxxv. 13.

15. **nullo . . . percepto**, 'having as yet acquired no military training,' i.e. having as yet imbibed no military instincts.

16. **neque in eo . . .** The order is, *potuerunt neque permanēre in eo consilio quod probaverant* (*ut . . . defenderent*), *neque imitari eam vim celeritatemque quam viderant prodesse aliis.*

17. **ut . . . defenderent**: carries on the sense of *eo consilio*, 'persevere in that resolution (which they had approved) namely, to defend . . .' The subj. is consecutive.

loco superiore: one of those abls. which are half abl. of 'place,' and half abl. of 'means by which.'

18. **aliis**: why dat.?

vim celeritatemque: have been absorbed into the relative clause, as in chap. xxxv. 30, 31.

imitari: a deponent verb.

19. **se**: is object to *recipere*: *demiserunt* also requires *se* as object.

20. **quorum**: partitive gen. So too, *militum* in line 25 below.

22, 23. **traducti erant**, 'had been transferred.' For the steps in their promotion, see Introduction, p. 14.

23, 24. **ne . . . amitterent.** Final subj.

rei militaris laudem: i.e. their reputation as fighters.

ante partam, 'which they had earned before,' *ante* is an adverb.

XLI.

1. **castrorum**: objective gen.

5–7. **ut . . . faceret**: consecutive subj.; the subject is Gaius Volusenus.

6. **missus**: translate, 'who had been sent.'

7. **fidem non faceret**, 'could not make them believe.'

9–12. **ut . . . dicerent . . . contenderent**: consecutive subjs.

9. **ut paene . . .** 'that they almost lost their senses, and declared the whole force had been annihilated, and that

(Volusenus') cavalry (alone) had escaped in the flight; and they maintained that if the army were safe the Germans would not have attacked the camp.'

12. **oppugnaturos fuisse.** The actual words of the men would be '*si exercitus incolumis fuisset, Germani castra non oppugnavissent.*'

XLII.

1. **unum:** object to *questus*, is explained by the clause *quod . . . emissae.*

2. **essent emissae:** subj. as stating the ground of Caesar's complaint. It is, therefore, Reported Speech. So too is *debuisse*, which depends on 'he added' understood from *questus*. 'No opportunity ought to have been left for even the slightest risk.'

> [NOTE.—English differs in its use of 'ought' from both Latin and French. Compare the following sentences—
>
> I ought *to obey* my father
Debeo *patri parēre*
Je devrais *obéir à mon père* } now.
>
> with—
>
> I ought *to have obeyed* my father
Debui *patri parēre*
J'aurais dû *obéir à mon père* } yesterday.]

3. **casu** = *casui*, old form of dative: very rare. Notice the emphatic word between *ne . . . quidem.*

4, 5. **multum . . . potuisse:** lit. 'had-been-able much'; say, 'had played a great part.' *Multum* is an adverbial accus.

> [NOTE.—The tense of *potuisse* shows that the incident was all over, finished (the *perfect*, or *finished* infinitive) when Caesar came to this conclusion (*iudicavit*). *Posse* would mean that fortune was playing a great part *at the very time* that he formed this conclusion.]

5. **multo amplius** (*potuisse*): lit. 'had-been-able more by much,' i.e. 'had played a far greater part.' *Multo*, adverb (really an ablative) qualifying *amplius.*

6, 7. **quod . . . avertisset:** subj. because it is Caesar's Reported Thought. The subject is *fortuna*; say, 'because she had . . .'

7. **quarum rerum:** partitive gen. after *id* understood as the antecedent to *quod . . . obtulerunt.*

8. **admirandum** (*esse*).

8–10. **eo consilio ut . . . depopularentur.** Cp. chap. xl. 16, 17. *Depopularentur* is deponent.

XLIII.

1. **ad vexandos hostes:** gerundive attraction.

5. **frumenta,** 'the crops.'

6. **tanta multitudine.** We might have expected *a tanta multitudine*, but collective nouns (such as *multitudo*, *exercitus*, &c.) are more often treated as the abl. of 'means' or 'instrument' than as an abl. of 'agent.' It is perhaps better to call it an abl. of 'attendant circumstances,' which is almost the same thing as saying it is an abl. absolute, 'the multitude being so great.'

tanta: as a rule it is better not to translate *tantus* by 'so great'; i. e. 'was being consumed by the so-great multitude of . . .' is scarcely English; say, 'by the great multitude.' (Unless, indeed, we make it a causal abl. abs. and say, 'since the number . . . was very great.')

8. **ut, si qui . . .:** lit. 'so that if any had hidden themselves . . ., yet by these it seemed necessary-to-be-perished . . .' Translate, 'so that it seemed that any who had concealed themselves, at least for the time being, were yet bound to perish of destitution when the army was withdrawn.'

etiam in praesentia: to be taken together. *praesentiă* is accus. plur.

9, 10. **his pereundum** (*esse*) **videretur.** The construction is impersonal (see last note). *videretur* is consecutive subj. after *ut*. *his* is dat. of the agent. See note on chap. ii. 15.

10. **ac saepe:** lit. 'and it was often come into that place (i. e. state of affairs) . . . that . . .' Say, 'and it often came to this, . . . that . . .' **ventum est** is impersonal.

This long sentence may be analysed thus :—

In EUM locum ventum est, *tanto . . . equitatu*,
  UT captivi (i) circumspicerent *Ambiorigem . . . visum*,
    nec (ii) contenderent . . . *abisse* ;
(and the result of *all* this was—)
 UT, *spe . . . illata*, *infinito . . . suscepto*,
   (a) (ii) *qui putarent se . . . ituros* (*esse*) . . . vincerent,
 -que (b) . . . videretur,
atque (c) ille . . . eriperet,
  et (d) . . . peteret. . . .

eum locum is answered by *ut . . . ut*. The second *ut* introduces four clauses which explain the consequence of the *whole* of the previous statement.

11, 12. **tanto . . . equitatu,** 'as a large force of cavalry had been despatched in every direction.'

12, 13. **ut . . . visum . . . Ambiorigem circumspicerent,** 'were looking about for A., whom they had just seen . . .'

13. **nec plane** = *et non-plane*, 'and declared that he had scarcely . . .'

15, 16. **qui . . . putarent.** This is not one of the clauses depending on *ut*, but a causal relative clause.

17. **naturam vincerent**: i. e. achieved the impossible.

17, 18. **paulum defuisse videretur**: impersonal: lit. 'it seemed that there had been wanting little.' Say, 'and always seemed to have only just missed complete success.'

19. **latebris aut saltibus**: another example of an abl. 'where the place is also the means' (Roby).

XLIV.

2. **damno**: abl. of 'attendant circumstances,' cp. chap. xxxiii. 13.

Durocortŏrum: accus. sing., *not* gen. plur.

Remorum: cp. *Lutetiam Parisiorum*, chap. iii. 13.

4. **coniuratione**: recorded in chap. iii.

5, 7. **de Accone . . . supplicium sumpsit . . .**, 'in the case of Acco . . . he punished him after the fashion of our forefathers.' **More** is like *damno* above, an ablative of 'attendant circumstances.' The victim was scourged to death and then beheaded.

5, 6. **princeps eius consilii**: cp. chap. iv. 1, 2; obj. gen.

8, 9. **quibus aqua atque igni interdixisset.** To forbid the use of fire and water is equivalent to banishing. The construction is regularly a dative (of disadvantage) and an ablative (following a verb which implies separation).

9. **ad fines**, 'near the territory (or frontier).'

11. **Agedinci**: locative.

exercitui: dat. of advantage.

12. **ut instituerat,** 'as was his wont': lit. 'as he had set up—i. e. begun—(to do).' From this meaning of *instituo* we get our word 'institution.'

12, 13. **ad conventus agendos**: gerundive attraction, 'to hold the assizes.' We must not forget that Caesar, during all these years of warfare, was governor of Cis-Alpine and Trans-Alpine Gaul, and therefore had to dispense justice as well as preserve order. It was his practice each winter (as he says, *ut instituerat*) to pay a visit to northern Italy (*Gallia Cis-Alpina*) for this and other purposes.

EXERCISES

I–V.

1. Caesar asked Pompey to enrol troops.
2. Sextius enlisted those who wished (*vŏlo*) to join the colours.
3. Having learnt these facts, the enemy think they ought-to-make-ready-for war.
4. Caesar collected four legions before the winter was over.
5. He set out for (the territory of) the Nervii before they could lay-waste the country.
6. Acco sends envoys to hand-over hostages.
7. He employed the Aedui as envoys.
8. Cavarinus ascertained that Gaul would be pacified.
9. He determined-on this (say, these things), in order that no rising should take-place.
10. Caesar will order two light-armed legions to set-out to him.

VI–X.

1. The Menapii took possession of the villages.
2. While Labienus was attacking the Treveri, the camp was pitched two miles away.
3. He hoped there would be five cohorts to guard the camp.
4. He said he would call together his own legions and those of Labienus.
5. Having hurled their javelins (abl. abs.), our men raised the battle-cry.
6. The Germans saw the rout of the Treveri and fled.
7. After Caesar had built the bridge, he left a garrison.
8. They begged him to spare them.
9. The Ubii, induced by want of supplies, chose a suitable spot for a battle.
10. He wished to ascertain what was happening among the Suebi.

XI–XV.

1. In each state there are two (not *duo*) chiefs.
2. Each chief allowed his slaves to return (*red-eo*).
3. One party set out to the Senate at Rome, the other forcibly seized the neighbouring country.
4. The Aedui see that they will enjoy a juster rule.
5. The majority are in debt and are oppressed by the more powerful.
6. The young men flocked (imperf.) to the Druids to be trained.
7. One of the Druids was chief over the young men.
8. He persuaded me that they learn verses by heart.
9. It happened that he was using Greek characters.
10. A war does not usually take place each year.

XVI–XX.

1. They fill the images with human beings, and set fire to them.
2. If a man is caught in theft, his punishment is pleasing to the gods.
3. They will devote the spoils of war to Mars.
4. I dare not hide the animal at home.
5. They considered it glorious (*pulcher*) to fight.
6. I will contribute as much money as you receive (fut. perf.) from your father.
7. His wife was (a lady) of noble birth.
8. It is acknowledged that his children were dear to him.
9. If you conceal (fut. perf.) anything, I shall report the matter to the magistrate.
10. It is well known that this is of use to Caesar.

XXI–XXV.

1. They have no one (*nemo*) to preside over the sacrifices.
2. My food consisted of milk, fish (*piscis* plur.) and berries (*bacca*).
3. They moved to another spot that they might not become-attached-to agriculture.
4. I will build a house to avoid the cold.
5. They make war on (*in* + acc.) their neighbours, and drive them from their land.
6. The Aedui looked-upon the Romans as friends.
7. The Germans seize the more fertile part of Gaul.

8. Since the Gauls have often (*saepe*) been conquered, I cannot compare them with the Germans in valour.
9. There is nobody who has approached this forest.
10. It seems to me that these animals ought to be seen.

XXVI–XXX.

1. The cow is heavier (*grăvis*) than the stag.
2. I was knocked down by accident, and could not get up.
3. The elephants are caught and killed by the young men.
4. The Suebi, fearing that Caesar would advance further, broke down the bridge.
5. He led his army back to protect the bridges.
6. Tullus will appoint me to the command of the garrison.
7. Basilus sent the cavalry forward to see if Ambiorix had done (*efficio*) anything.
8. I will catch them in the fields before they can see (*conspicor*) me.
9. Ambiorix' horse was captured, but he himself escaped.
10. The woods will shield (*protĕgo*) us as we fight.

XXXI–XXXV.

1. I am not sure (*exploratum non habeo*) whether he fought a battle or escaped (*effugio*).
2. Being unable to fight, the enemy began-to-plot (imperf.).
3. Caesar says that he will not send the Segni help, if they injure their neighbours' territories.
4. I shall send all the baggage to Aduatuca, in the middle of the Eburones' land.
5. He sent two legions to lay waste the fields of the Menapii.
6. Caesar exhorted Gaius to come to him, and promised to return in seven days.
7. He thought he ought to slay wicked men rather than ravage the (country of the) Eburones.
8. I recognize the power of fortune.
9. The Ubii were most eager to possess cattle.
10. Caesar asked where the Eburones were.

XXXVI–XL.

1. Not even a single soldier was allowed (use *licet*) to go out of camp.
2. Three cohorts were sent to cut corn.
3. I had no chance of retreating (*recipio me* = I retreat).
4. Each tells the other that the camp will be taken.

5. You must not let such a chance slip.
6. Caesar was fearful for his safety and that of the army.
7. I wait to hear what you say.
8. When they caught-sight-of the legions, they made a charge.
9. I have shown that the cohort broke through the midst of the enemy.
10. Some come safely into camp, others fall fighting.

XLI–XLIV.

1. The fortifications are so great that the barbarians retreat across the Rhine.
2. Our men declared that the camp would be attacked by the Germans.
3. The fear of the army was removed by Caesar's arrival.
4. It is very remarkable that fortune plays so large a part in war.
5. Caesar will cross the Rhine with the intention of ravaging the territories of the enemy.
6. Any whose houses have been burnt must perish.
7. Ambiorix did not win great favour from Caesar.
8. When he has devastated the country, Caesar will lead two cohorts back to Durocortŏrum.
9. Acco, the leader of the conspiracy, was punished.
10. He stationed two legions at Agedincum, held the assizes, and returned to Durocortŏrum.

MILITARY PHRASES

ambush, insidiae (plur.).
ambush, to set an or be in, insidiāri.
appoint . . . in command of, to, praeficere + acc. + dat.
assemble troops, to, see *muster*.
attack, to, adorīri, oppugnāre.

baggage, impedīmenta (neut. pl.).
baggage animal, iumentum.
battle-cry, to raise the, clāmorem tollere.
besiege, to, obsidēre.

camp-follower, cālo.
camp, to pitch a, castra pōnere.
camp, to strike, castra movēre.
cavalry, equitātus.
charge, impetus, (*the actual encounter*) concursus.
charge, to, infestis signis īre ad.
column of march, agmen.
commissariat, res frumentāria.
company (i. e. cohort), cohors, signum.
cut off, to, circumvenīre.

defences, mūnitio, mūnitiōnes.
difficult position, locus impedītus.
disadvantageous position, locus iniquus.

encounter, concursus.
engage (in battle), to, proelium committere.
enlist (trans.), *to*, sacramento rogare.
enlist (intr.), *to*, ad signa convenīre.
enrol troops, to, dēlectum habēre, cōpias conscrībere.

face about, to, signa converti.
fire a volley at, to, pīla immittere in.
flank, latus.
flanks, on the, ad latera.
forage, to, frūmentāri.
forced marches, magna itinera.
forces, cōpiae.
form, to, aciem dīrigere.
fort, castellum.
fortifications, mūnitiōnes.

garrison, praesidium.
gate, rear gate, porta, decumāna porta.
guard (the baggage), to, praesidio impedīmentis esse.
guide, dux.

harass, to, vexāre.

infantry, peditātus.
intercept, to, see *cut off*.
irregular troops, auxilia.

javelin, pīlum.
join battle, to, proelium committere.
join the colours, to, ad signa convenīre.

light-armed, expedītus.
line of battle, acies.
line the walls, to, mūrum cingere.
loss, damnum.

muster forces, to, manus, cōpias cōgere, condūcere.

officers, see Introduction.
outpost, statio.

pitch a camp, to, castra pōnere.
pitched battle, to fight a, proelio dīmicāre.
prisoner, captīvus.

rampart, vallum.
ravage, see *waste*.
rear-guard, novissimum agmen.
recruits, modo conscripti.
retreat, to, se recipere.
rising, motus.

scout, explōrātor.
siege, obsessio.
soldier, (legiōnārius) mīles.
squadron, turma.
stand a charge, to, impetum ferre, sustinēre.
standard, signum, vexillum (see note on chap. xxxvi. 17, 18).
station, to, collocāre.
strike camp, to, castra movēre.
supplies, res frumentaria.
sutler, see *camp-follower*.

tent, tabernāculum.

unite with, to, congredi cum.

waste, to lay, dēpopulāri.
wedge formation, cuneus.
wheel, to, see *face about*.
winter quarters, hiberna (neut. pl.).
withdraw troops, to, exercitum redūcere, dēdūcere.
works, see *defences*.

THE MORE IMPORTANT GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTIONS, &c.

CASES.

Ablative.

Used after words expressing 'fullness,' xvi. 11.

Accusative.

Motion towards—

(*a*) with preposition, iii. 2, v. 18, xii. 1, xxxv. 25.

(*b*) without preposition, iii. 12, viii. 30, xii. 16, xxxii. 12, xxxv. 25, xliv. 2;

(*c*) both constructions, xii. 16.

Space covered, xxv. 11.

Used adverbially: *nihil*, xiii. 3, *quid*, xxix. 21, xxx. 5.

Dative.

Agent (after gerundive), ii. 14, xliii. 9.

Person or thing affected—

(*a*) advantageously, vii. 10, xxxii. 6, xliv. 11;

(*b*) disadvantageously, v. 14, xiii. 22, xxiii. 21, 24, xxix. 6.

Purpose, viii. 20, 29, xxviii. 9.

Recipient, xxiv. 13.

Purpose and Recipient, xxxii. 18, xxxiv. 19.

Used after compounds of *sum*: *desum*, xxxiv. 20, *intersum*, xiii. 10, *praesum*, xiii. 25, 26, xxi. 2, xxiii. 8, *prosum*, xl. 18.

Used after words expressing 'nearness,' v. 9, xxxi. 8, xxxv. 11, xxxvii. 5.

Used after *confisus*, xiv. 13, *consimilis*, xxvii. 2, *dedo*, xvi. 1, *diffisus*, xxxviii. 5, *faveo*, vii. 23, *idoneus*, x. 6, *parco*, ix. 15, xxviii. 4, *pareo*, xiii. 34, 55, *praepositus*, xl. 11, *similis* (or gen.), vii. 29, *studeo*, xiv. 14, xxi. 3, xxii. 1, xxix. 4.

Accusative and Dative after *postpono*, iii. 12, *praeficio*, xxix. 13, 14, xxxii. 21.

Genitive.

Definition, v. 2.

Locative, xliv. 11.

Material, xvii. 16, xxi. 15.

Objective, xxi. 14, xxxi. 12, xxxv. 17, xxxix. 5, xli. 1, xliv. 6

Origin, xviii. 1.

Partitive, ix. 17, xii. 13, xiii. 1, xxii. 6, xxix. 17, xxxi. 12, xxxv. 13, xl. 20, xlii. 7; after *quid*, i. 12, vii. 25, xiii. 23; after *nihil*, xii. 13; after *tantum*, xxxv. 27.

Price, with *interest*, i. 9.

Possessor, iii. 13, v. 12, xxii. 1; (=mark of), xxx. 10.

Quality, xxv. 2, xxix. 9.

Used after *egeo*, xi. 12, *similis* (or dat.), vii. 29, *vacatio*, xiv. 2.

Casu (= *casui*), xlii. 3.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

The quantity is marked only when the syllable is long.

Acco, -ōnis. A chief of the Senones who headed the disaffection recorded in chaps. iii and iv. He was executed *more maiorum* (ch. xliv).

Aduātuca, -ae, *f.* Either the modern *Tongres* or a village near *Liège* in the middle of the country inhabited by the Eburōnes. It was here that Cicero narrowly escaped disaster at the hands of the Sugambri (ch. xxxv–xli).

Aduātuci, -ōrum, *m.* A powerful tribe of Germans, who inhabited the country between the Scaldis (*Scheldt*) and the Mosa (*Meuse*). They were men of great stature. In B.C. 57 Caesar conquered them, and treated them with great severity, contrary to his usual custom, on account of a treacherous attack made by them. In B.C. 54 they joined Ambiorix in his attack on Cicero's camp at *Charleroi.* In B.C. 53 (the date of the present book) they were again unrestful (ch. ii, xxxiii).

Aedui, -ōrum, *m.* A powerful Gallic tribe occupying the country between the Upper Liger (*Loire*) and the Arar (*Saône*), whom the Romans had taken under their protection. Their great rivals were the Sēquani. The Sēquani posed as the patriot state, and invited the Germans into their country as a counterpoise to the Romans. The Aedui were attacked and worsted, and turned to Rome for assistance. Caesar restored their prestige. They remained loyal until the general rising of B.C. 52 (ch. iv, xii).

Agedincum, -i, *n.* The modern *Sens* on the *Yonne,* a tributary of the Sequana (*Seine*). It was the capital of the Senones (ch. xliv).

Ambiorix, -īgis, *m.* A chief of the Eburōnes, who rewarded kind treatment on Caesar's part by organizing the attack on Sabinus and Cotta, B. C. 54 (*see* Introd. p. 9). Caesar pursued him vainly during B. C. 53 (ch. ii, v, vi, ix, xxix–xxxiii, xlii, xliii).

Anartes, -ium, *m.* A tribe inhabiting the north-east of Hungary, between the *Danube* and the *Theiss* (ch. xxv).

Apollo. One of the principal gods of Greece and Rome, identified by Caesar with Belen, a Gallic (Celtic) deity (ch. xvii).

Arduenna Silva, -ae, *f.* A vast forest extending westward from the Rhenus (*Rhine*), and bounded by the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Mosella (*Moselle*). It covered the *Ardennes* uplands (ch. xxix, xxxi, xxxiii).

Ariovistus, -i, *m.* A German chief, prince of the Suebi. He had been styled *amicus Populi Romani*. In B. C. 58 Caesar expelled him from Gaul (ch. xii).

Atrebas, -ātis, *adj.* An Atrebatian (ch. vi). (The Atrebātes were a Belgian tribe.)

Auruncul̄eius, -i. *See* **Cotta.**

Bacēnis Silva, -ae. Apparently the Thüringer Wald is the western extremity of this illimitable forest (ch. x).

Baculus, -i. *See* **Sextius.**

Basilus, Lucius Minucius, -i. A brilliant cavalry officer (ch. xxix, xxx).

Britannia, -ae, *f.* Britain. Caesar twice invaded the island, B. C. 55 and 54 (ch. xiii).

Caesar, Gaius Iulius (*see* Introd.).

Carnūtes, -um, *m.* A Gallic (Celtic) tribe inhabiting the country round the upper part of the Liger (*Loire*). Their chief town was Cenabum (*Orleans*) (ch. ii–iv, xiii, xliv).

Catuvolcus, -i. Prince of half of the Eburōnes. He joined Ambiorix' revolt in B. C. 53, and committed suicide on Caesar's approach (ch. xxxi).

Cavarīnus, -i. A prince of the Senones. He threw in his lot with Caesar (ch. v).

Cherusci, -ōrum, *m.* A German tribe who lived on the borders of the Bacēnis Silva (ch. x).

Cicero, Quintus Tullius, -ōnis. Brother of the celebrated orator. In B. C. 55 he joined Caesar and became one of his commanders or lieutenants (*lēgātus*). In B. C. 54 he was hard pressed in his winter quarters among the Nervii (at *Charleroi*) by the revolted tribes of that district, but was relieved by Caesar. In B. C. 53, when

in the winter of B.C. 54, and cut to pieces fifteen cohorts that were quartered under Sabinus and Cotta in their land. Caesar destroyed the whole tribe (ch. v, xxxi–xxxv).

Eratosthenes, -is. A learned Alexandrian who lived B.C. 276–196. He was a native of Cyrene (ch. xxiv).

Fabius Maximus, Gaius, -i. One of Caesar's lieutenants or commanders (*lēgātus*) (ch. vi).

Gallia, -ae, *f.* Gaul. *See* Introduction.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* Gallic.

Gallus, -i, *m.* A Gaul.

Germānia, -ae, *f.* Germany (*see* Introd.).

Germāni, -orum, *m.* Germans.

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* German.

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.* Grecian; as noun **Graeci**, -ōrum, *m.*, Greeks.

Helvētii, -ōrum, *m.* A tribe of Gauls (Celts) occupying the western part of Switzerland between the Jura mountains and the lake of Geneva (*Lemannus*). They attempted in B.C. 58 to migrate into Gaul, but were defeated by Caesar (ch. xxv).

Hercynia Silva, -ae, *f.* (also called *Orcynia*). An illimitable forest covering at leas the highlands of the Thur ingian States, Bavaria and Bohemia (ch. xxiv xxv).

Indutiomārus, -i. A chie of the Treveri, who in stigated the rising unde Ambiorix in the winter o B.C. 54. He attacke Labiēnus, but was slai in a skirmish (ch. ii, viii

Italia, -ae, *f.* Italy.

Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* Jupite (corresponding to the Gree *Zeus*), the king of the god and ruler of heaven Identified by Caesar wit the Gallic god Taran (ch xvii).

Labiēnus, Titus Atius, - Caesar's most prominen lieutenant or commande (*lēgātus*). He served wit distinction throughou Caesar's campaigns, but i B.C. 49, at the commence ment of the civil war, h deserted to Pompey (th only one of Caesar's office to do so). He was slain a Munda in Spain, B.C. 45 fighting against his ol commander (ch. v, vii, vii xxxiii).

Lingones, -um. A Galli (Celtic) tribe inhabitin the watershed that divide the Sequana (*Seine*) an Liger (*Loire*) from the valle of the Arar (*Saône*), to th north-east of the Aedu (ch. xliv).

tween the Arduenna Silva, the Isara (*Oise*), and the Matrona (*Marne*). Their capital was Dūrocortorum (*Rheims*). They were constant allies of the Romans (ch. iv, xii, xliv).

Rhēnus, -i, *m.* The Rhine (ch. ii, v, ix, xxiv, xxix, xxxii, xxxv, xli, xlii).

Rōma, -ae, *f.* Rome (ch. xii).

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* Roman; as noun **Rōmāni**, -ōrum, *m.* The Romans.

Sabīnus. *See* **Titurius.**

Scaldis, -is, *m.* The Scheldt (ch. xxxiii, *see* note on the passage).

Segni, -ōrum, *m.* A German tribe located between the Eburōnes and Treveri on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*). After the rising in B. C. 53, they sent to Caesar to assure him they had taken no part in it (ch. xxxii).

Senones, -um, *m.* A powerful Gallic (Celtic) tribe living between the upper waters of the Liger (*Loire*) and the Sequana (*Seine*). Their capital was Agedincum (*Sens*). In B. C. 53 Caesar suspected them of a desire to revolt. In B. C. 52 they joined in the general rising under Vercingetorix (ch. ii, iii, v, xliv). (Another branch of this people migrated to Italy about B. C. 400, and settled on the upper coast of the Adriatic, where they founded a town known as Sena Gallica, famous for the defeat of Hasdrubal, B. C. 207.)

Sēquani, -orum, *m.* A powerful Gallic (Celtic) tribe living between the Arar (*Saône*) and the Jura mountains. They were violently anti-Roman (*see* note on the Aedui). Their capital was Vesontio (*Besançon*) (ch. xii).

Sextius Baculus, Publius, -i. A primipilus who greatly distinguished himself in the defence of the camp under Cicero attacked by the Sugambri (ch. xxxviii).

Sextius, Titus, -i. One of Caesar's lieutenants or commanders (*lēgātus*) (ch. i).

Silānus, Marcus, -i. A lieutenant or commander (*lēgātus*) of Caesar's (ch. i).

Suebi, -orum (also spelt Suevi). The name given to many nomadic German tribes (ch. ix, x, xxix).

Sugambri, -ōrum, *m.* (also spelt Sigambri). A German tribe living to the east of the lower Rhine (in Westphalia). They attacked Cicero's camp in B. C. 53, and nearly succeeded in destroying his force (ch. xxxv foll.).

Tectosages. *See* **Volcae.**

Tencteri, -ōrum (also spelt Tenchteri). A German tribe living on the right bank of the Rhine opposite

VOCABULARY

The quantity is marked only when the syllable is long.

a, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by, at, on the side of, at a distance of.
abditus, *part.*, *see* **abdo.**
abdo, -ere, abdidi, abditum, *v. a.*, hide.
abeo, -īre, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, *v. n.*, go away, depart.
abisse, *for* abiisse, *see* **abeo.**
absisto, -ere, abstiti, *v. n.*, desist, stand aloof from.
absum, abesse, *v. n.*, be away from, be absent, take no part in.
ac, *conj.*, *see* **atque.**
acceptus, *part.*, *see* **accipio.**
accido, -ere, -cidi (ad + cado), *v. n.*, happen.
accīdo, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum (ad + caedo), *v. a.*, cut into, fell, cut.
accipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (ad + capio), *v. a.*, receive, sustain, learn, hear of.
accūrātē, *adv.*; *comp.* -tius; *sup.* -tissime; carefully, exactly.
acies, -ēi, *f.*, line of battle, battle array.
ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, towards, up to, at, by, near to, for, for the purpose of; *ad urbem*, in the neighbourhood of the city; *ad latera*, on the flanks.
adaequo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a. and n.*, make equal to, equal, rival.
addūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, lead to, bring together, assemble, induce, urge.
adeo, -īre, -ii, -itum, *v. n.*, go to, approach.
adhibeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum (ad + habeo), *v. a.*, summon, employ, consult, admit.
adhortor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, encourage, urge on.
adiaceo, -ēre, -iacui, *v. n.*, lie, be situated at *or* near to.
adisse, *for* adiisse, *see* **adeo.**
aditus, -ūs (adeo), *m.*, a going to, approach, contact.
adiunctus, *part.*, *see* **adiungo.**
adiungo, -ere, -nxi, -nctum, *v. a.*, join to, attach, unite.
administer, -tri, *m.*, an attendant, agent.

administro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, manage, attend to.
admīrandus, -a, -um, *gerund. of* admīror, wonderful, surprising.
admīror, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, wonder at, admire.
admitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, admit, commit.
admodum, *adv.*, up to the limit, much, very.
admoneo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, advise, warn.
adolesco, -ere, adolēvi (*or* adolui), **adultum,** *v. n.*, grow up.
adorior, -īri, -ortus sum, *v. dep.*, attack.
adsum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*, be present.
adulescens, -entis; *as adj.*, young; *as subs.*, a young man. (*See* note, ch. xxix. 14.)
adventus, -ūs, *m.*, a coming to, arrival.
adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposite.
aedificium, -ii (aedes + facio), *n.*, a building.
aedifico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (aedes + facio), *v. a.*, make a building, to build.
aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill.
aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty.
aequitās, -ātis, *f.*, equality, justice; *animi aequitas*, contentment.
aequo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a. and n.*, make equal.
aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, equal, favourable, fair.
aes, aeris, *n.*, bronze, money; *aes aliēnum*, debt.
aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer.
aestimātio, -ōnis, *f.*, valuation, estimate.
aestīvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, summer (*as*, summer time).
aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat, tide.
aetās, -ātis, *f.*, age.
affectus, *part.*, *see* **afficio.**
affero, -ferre, attuli, allātum, *v. a.*, bring to, bring forward, cause.
afficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, affect, treat; *dolore afficere*, vex; *morbo affici*, to be attacked with disease.
afflīgo, -ere, -ixi, -ictum, *v. a.*, throw down, overthrow.
afuisse, *see* **absum.**
ager, -gri, *m.*, field, land, territory.
aggrego, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.* (ad + grex, gregis, a flock), to add to a flock; *se aggregāre*, ally one's self to.
agmen, -inis (ago), *n.*, an army on the march, column, line of march; *novissimum agmen*, the rear.
ago, -ere, -ēgi, actum, *v. a.*, drive, do, act, push forward, treat with.
agricultūra, -ae (ager + colo), *f.*, farming.
alcēs, -is, *f.*, elk.
aliēnātus, distraught; *part. from* aliēno.
aliēnissimus, *adj. superl.*, *see* aliēnus, most hostile; *as noun*, a complete stranger.
aliēno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, deprive of reason.
aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to another, foreign, inappropriate; *aes alienum*, debt.

aliō, *adv.*, to another place.
aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for a considerable time.
aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, somewhat, some, considerable; *as subs. n.*, a certain amount.
aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, *indef. adj.*, some.
aliquis, aliquid, *indef. pron.*, some one, something.
aliter (alius), *adv.*, otherwise; *aliter ac*, otherwise than.
alius, -a, -ud, *adj.*, another, other; *alius . . . alius*, one . . . another; *alii . . . alii*, some . . . others.
alo, -ere, alui, altum *and* alitum, *v. a.*, feed, promote.
alter, -era, -erum, *adj.*, the other (of two), *alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other.
altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep.
ambactus, -i, *m.*, retainer, vassal.
amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.
amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly.
āmitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, lose.
amplifico, -āre, -āvi, -atum (amplus + facio), *v. a.*, enlarge, extend, increase.
amplitūdō, -inis, *f.*, width, size.
amplius, *comp. adv.*, more, further, greater.
amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, full, distinguished.
an, *conj.* (*introducing second half of double sentence*), or whether; *an . . . an*, whether . . . or.
angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, contracted.
anima, -ae, *f.*, breath, soul.
animadverto, -ere, -ti, -sum (animum + adverto), *v. a.*, turn the mind to, notice.
animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal.
animus, -i, *m.*, mind, courage, thought, disposition.
annus, -i, *m.*, year.
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before.
ante, *adv.*, before, previously.
anteā, *adv.*, before, formerly.
antecēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, go before, surpass.
antīquitus, *adv.* (antiquus), in former times.
apertē, *adv.*, openly, manifestly.
apertus, -a, -um, *part. of* aperio; *as adj.*, open, unprotected.
appello, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, call upon, call.
appeto, -ere, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, *v. a. and n.*, approach.
applico, -āre, -āvi *and* -ui, -ātum *and* -itum, *v. a.*, attach to, affix; *se applicare*, to lean against.
appropinquo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. n.*, approach.
aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable.
apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, in, among, with; *apud se*, at his own house (chez lui).
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.
arbitrium, -ii (arbiter, an umpire), *n.*, a decision.
arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum, (arbiter), *v. dep.*, think, consider.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.
ardeo, -ēre, arsi, arsum, *v. n.*, be on fire, burn.
argentum, -i, *n.*, silver.
arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms ; *in armis esse*, to be under arms.
arripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum (ad + rapio), *v.a.*, seize, snatch up.
ars, -tis, *f.*, art, skill.
articulus, -i, *m.*, joint.
artificium, -i, *n.*, handicraft, a trade.
ascendo, -ere, -scendi, -scensum (ad + scando), *v. n. and a.*, climb, mount up.
assiduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, constant, continual.
assisto, -ere, -stiti, *v. n.*, stand by *or* near.
assuēfacio, -ere, -fēci, -factum, *v. a.*, accustom ; *in pass.*, to get used to.
assuesco, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, *v. a. and n.*, get accustomed to.
at, *conj.*, but, yet, at least.
atque, ac, *conj.*, and ; *aliter . . . atque or ac*, otherwise than.
attingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum (ad + tango), reach, border upon.
attribuo, -ere, -tribui, -tribūtum, *v. a.*, allot, assign.
auctor, -ōris (augeo), *m.*, adviser, ringleader.
auctōritas, -ātis (auctor), *f.*, influence.
audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness, daring.
audeo, -ēre, ausus sum, *v. n. semi-dep.*, dare.
audio, -īre, -īvi *and* -ii, -ītum, *v. a.*, hear, obey.
augeo, -ēre, auxi, auctum, *v. a.*, enlarge, increase.
auris, -is, *f.*, ear.
aut, *conj.*, or ; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or.
autem, *conj.*, but, moreover, now.
auxilium, -ii (augeo), *n.*, help ; *pl.*, auxiliaries, reinforcements.
āverto, -ere, -ti, -sum, *v. a.*, turn away, turn aside.

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, strange, barbarous ; *as noun*, a foreigner, barbarian.
bellicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, warlike.
bellum, -i, *n.*, war.
bene, *adv.*, well.
beneficium, -ii (bene + facio), *n.*, a kindness, favour.
biduum, -i (bis + dies), *n.*, a period of two days.
bis, *num. adv.*, twice.
bonum, -i, *n.*, a good thing, advantage ; *in pl.*, goods, property.
bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, favourable, wealthy.
bōs, bovis, *com.*, ox, cow.
boum, *gen. pl. of* bōs.
brevis, -e, *adj.*, short (*of time and space*).

cado, -ere, cecidi, cāsum, *v. n.*, fall, be killed.
caedēs, -is (caedo), *f.*, slaughter.
caelestis, -e, *adj.*, heavenly, celestial ; *as noun, caelestes, -ium, pl.*, the inhabitants of heaven, the gods.

calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, mishap, disaster.
cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, a baggage servant.
capio, -ere, cēpi, captum, *v. a.*, take.
caprea, -ae, *f.*, she-goat, roe.
captīvus, -a, -um (capio), *adj.*, captured; *as noun, captīvus, -i, m.*, a prisoner, captive.
captus, *part.*, *see* **capio**, captivated, seduced; *as noun, capta, -ōrum, n. pl.*, plunder.
careo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. n.*, be without (*governs abl.*).
carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh.
cāseus, -i, *m.*, cheese.
castellum, -i (*dim. of* castrum), *n.*, a fort.
castra, -ōrum, *n.*, a camp; *castra ponere*, to pitch a camp.
cāsus, -ūs (cado), *m.*, accident, disaster, chance, event, fate; *dat. casu* (ch. xlii. 3).
causa, -ae, *f.*, reason, cause, occasion; *abl.*, for the sake *or* purpose of.
caveo, -ēre, cāvi, cautum, *v. n.*, beware, take precautions, give bail.
cēdo, -ere, cessi, cessum, *v. n.*, retire, abandon.
celeritās, -ātis, *f.*, quickness, speed, swiftness.
celeriter, *adv.*, quickly, speedily.
censeo, -ēre, censui, censum, *v. a. and n.*, be of opinion, propose, determine.
centum, *num. adj.*, a hundred.
centurio, -ōnis, *m.*, a captain of a hundred men, a centurion.
cerno, -ere, crēvi, crētum, *v. a.*, see, perceive.
certē, *adv.*, certainly, undoubtedly.
certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fixed, settled, trustworthy; (*aliquem*) *certiorem facere*, let anyone know, inform; *in pass.*, *certior fieri*, to be informed.
cervus, -i, *m.*, a stag, deer.
cēterus, -a, -um (*nom. sing. masc. not used*), *adj.*, the rest of; *in pl.*, *cēteri, -ōrum*, the rest of, the others.
cibāria, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, provisions.
cibus, -i, *m.*, food.
cingo, -ere, -xi, -nctum, *v. a.*, surround, man (*the walls*).
circiter, *adv.*, about, near.
circum, *prep. with acc. and adv.*, around, about.
circumclūdo, -ere, -si, -sum (claudo), *v. a.*, surround.
circumdatus, *part.*, *see* **circumdo**.
circumdo, -dare, -dedi, -datum, *v. a.*, surround, inclose.
circumfundo, -ere, -fūdi, -fūsum, *v. a.*, pour round; *se circumdare*, crowd, gather round; *in pass.*, to surround.
circumfūsus, *part.*, *see* **circumfundo**.
circumspicio, -icere, -exi,

-ectum, *v. n. and a.*, look around, consider.
circumvenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *v. a.*, come round (*esp. in a hostile way*), surround, entrap, cheat.
circumventus, *part.*, *see* circumvenio.
Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lying on the near *or* south side of the Alps, Cisalpine.
Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, situated on this side of the Rhine.
citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of.
cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*, citizenship, a state (*i. e.* the body of citizens).
clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, a shout, shouting.
cliens, -tis, *m.*, a dependent, vassal.
clientēla, -ae, *f.*, dependency, vassalage.
coactū, *m.* (*only in abl.*), by forcing, by compulsion.
coēgi, *see* cōgo.
coeo, -īre, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, *v. n.*, come together, assemble.
cōgito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a. and n.*, consider, reflect upon; *nihil cōgitārė*, to form no plan.
cognātio, -ōnis, *f.*, kindred, relations.
cognitus, *part.*, *see* cognosco.
cognosco, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum, *v. a.*, discover, learn.
cōgo, -ere, coēgi, coactum (co + ago), *v. a.*, bring together, collect, concentrate, compel.
cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort.
cohortor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, encourage, exhort.
coierim, *perf. subj.*, *see* coeo.
collaudo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, praise highly.
collectus, *part.*, *see* colligo.
colligo, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, *v. a.*, get together, collect, acquire.
collis, -is, *m.*, hill.
colloco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, place, station.
colo, -ere, colui, cultum, *v. a.*, cultivate, worship.
colōnia, -ae (colonus, colo), *f.*, a colony, a body of colonists.
color, -ōris, *m.*, colour.
comes, -itis (com + eo), *c.*, companion, attendant.
comitor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, accompany.
committo, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send *or* bring together, commit (*a crime*), entrust; *pugnam or proelium committere*, to join battle.
commodius, *adv. comp. of* commodē, skilfully, properly.
commodus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable; *subs.*, *commodum*, *-i*, *n.*, advantage, profit.
commūnico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, make common, share (*with anyone*), impart, consult.
commūnio, -īre, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, *v. a.*, fortify strongly, entrench.
commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general.

commūtātio, -ōnis, *f.*, change, alteration.
commūto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, exchange, replace.
comparo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (con + paro), *v. a.*, prepare, make ready, acquire, gain.
comparo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, (com + par), *v. a.*, to compare.
comperio, -īre, -peri, -pertum, *v. a.*, learn, ascertain.
compleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *v. a.*, fill full, fill up.
complūres, -a, -ium, *adj.* (*pl.* only), several, very many.
comporto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, carry together, collect, convey.
comprehendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, catch *or* seize hold of.
concēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. a.*, yield, grant.
concerto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, contend.
concessus, *see* concēdo.
concido, -ere, -cidi, *v. n.*, fall, fall down.
concilio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, reconcile.
concilium, -i, *n.*, assembly, council.
concurro, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *v. n.*, run together, resort, encounter.
concursus, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, encounter, collision.
condicio, -ōnis, *f.*, condition (*of a bargain*), condition (= circumstances).
condūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, lead *or* bring together, collect, hire.
confectus, *part.*, *see* conficio.
confero, conferre, contuli, collātum, *v. a.*, bring together, collect.
confertus, -a, -um. dense, in close order.
confestim, *adv.*, forthwith.
conficio, -cere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, accomplish, finish, wear out, disable.
confīdo, -ere, -fīsus sum, *v. n.*, *semi-dep.*, trust, rely on.
confīnis, -e, *adj.*, bordering on, adjoining.
confīnium, -i, *n.*, limit, border.
confīsus, *part.*, *see* confīdo.
confirmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, make firm, to strengthen; *sese confirmāre*, pluck up courage, to assert oneself.
confugio, -ere, -fūgi, *v. n.*, flee for refuge, retreat.
congredior, -i, -gressus sum, *v. dep.*, meet, engage, fight; *congredi cum*, to make common cause with.
cōnicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, cast, hurl; *in fugam conicere*, to put to flight; *se conicere*, to throw themselves.
coniectus, *part.*, *see* conicio.
coniunctim, *adv.*, jointly, in common.
coniungo, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, join, unite.
coniūrātio, -ōnis (con + iuro), *f.*, conspiracy.
cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, attempt, try.
conquīro, -ere, -quīsīvi, -quī-

sītum (con + quaero), *v. a.*, seek after, search for.
conscribo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v. a.*, enlist, enrol; *modo conscripti*, lately enrolled, *i. e.* recruits.
consecro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, make sacred, consecrate.
consector, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, chase, pursue.
consēderam, *pluperf.*, *see* consīdo.
consequor, -i, -cūtus sum, *v. dep.*, follow up.
conservo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, retain, maintain, preserve.
consīdo, -ere, -sēdi, -sessum, *v. n.*, take post, pitch a camp, hold a meeting, settle.
consilium, -i, *n.*, plan, counsel, intention, plot, council of war; *consilia communicare*, make common cause; *capere*, *inire consilium*, form a plan, plot.
consimilis, -e, *adj.*, very like.
consisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *v. n.*, stand, take up a stand, consist in *or* of, be occupied, settle.
conspectus, -ūs, *m.*, a seeing, view.
conspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *v. a.*, behold, observe.
conspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, see, perceive.
constat, constāre, constitit, *v. impers.*, it is well known, certain.
constituo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a. and n.*, draw up, arrange, appoint, establish, decide, resolve.
consuērint = consuēverint, *see* consuesco.
consuērunt = consuēverunt, *see* consuesco.
consuesco, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum, *v. n.*, grow accustomed; *in perf. tenses*, be accustomed, be wont.
consuētūdo, -inis (consuesco), *f.*, custom, practice, intercourse.
consul, -ulis, *m.*, consul.
consulo, -ere, -lui, -ltum, *v. a. and n.*, take counsel; *consulo te*, I consult you; *consulo tibi*, I consult for you, take care of you.
consūmo, -ere, -sumpsi, -sumptum, *v. a.*, use up, consume, waste, spend.
consurgo, -ere, -surrexi, -surrectum, *v. n.*, arise, rise up.
contāgio, -ōnis, *f.*, contact, contamination.
contendo, -ere, -di, -tum, *v. n.*, contend (*as rivals*), fight, hasten, assert.
contexo, -ere, -ui, -tum, *v. a.*, weave, connect, construct.
continens, -entis, *adj.*, unbroken, continuous, neighbouring; *as a noun*, *f.*, *continens* (*terra*), continent, mainland.
contineo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum (con + teneo), *v. a.*, keep, keep in, restrain, contain; *se continēre*, to retain one's position.
contingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum (con + tango), *v. a.*, touch, reach.
continuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, un-

broken, continuous, successive.

contio, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly, speech.

contrā, *prep. with acc.*, over against, opposite to, against.

contrā, *adv.*, in opposition, in reply, on the other hand.

contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, contention, dispute.

convalesco, -ere, -valui, *v. n.*, get well, recover.

convenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *v. n.*, come together, muster, assemble.

conventus, -ūs, *m.*, assembly, (*of soldiers*) parade. assizes.

converto, -ere, -ti, -sum, *v. a. and n.*, turn, direct.

convoco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, call together, assemble.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance; *cōpiae*, forces, wealth, riches.

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart; *cordi esse*, be dear to, be beloved.

cōram, *adv. and prep. with abl.*, under his own eyes, in the presence of.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.

cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily.

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, frequent, many, numerous.

crēdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a. and n.*, entrust, trust, believe.

cremo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, burn.

cruciātus, -ūs (crucio, crux), *m.*, torture.

crūs, -ūris, *n.*, leg.

cubīle, -is (cubo), *n.*, place of rest, couch, lair.

culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault.

cultus, -ūs (colo), *m.*, way of living, civilization, dress.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.

cum, *conj.*, when, since, although; *cum . . . tum*, both . . . and.

cuneus, -i, *n.*, a wedge-formation (*military term*).

cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*, desire, greed.

cupidus, -a, -um (cupio), *adj.*, desirous of, eager for, covetous.

cupio, -ere, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, *v. a. and n.*, desire, wish, long for.

cūr, *adv.*, why, wherefore.

cūro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, care for; *with gerundive attr.*, *pontem faciendum curo*, I have a bridge built.

cursus, -ūs (curro), *m.*, course, gallop, speed.

custōdio, -īre, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, *v. a.*, guard.

custōs, -ōdis, *com.*, guard.

damnum, -i, *n.*, hurt, injury, loss.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from, about, concerning, for; *multis de causis*, for many reasons.

dēbeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, owe; *in pass.*, be due.

dēcēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, go away, depart, die.

dēcerno, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, *v. a. and n.*, decide, decree.

decimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tenth.

dēcrētum, -i (decerno), *n.*, decision, decree.

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *porta decumāna*, decuman gate, rear-gate (*of a camp*).
dēditio, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender; *in deditionem venire*, to capitulate.
dēdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a.*, deliver, give up, devote.
dēdūco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *v. a.*, lead away, lead, withdraw (*troops*), launch.
dēfectio, -ōnis (deficio), *f.*, rebellion.
dēfendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, repel, ward off, defend.
dēfensor, -ōris, *m.*, defender.
dēfero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *v. a.*, bring down, lead down; *rem deferre*, report a matter; convey, bestow.
dēficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a. and n.*, revolt, fail.
dēfugio, -fūgi, *v. a. and n.*, to flee from, avoid, shun.
dēiectus, -a, -um, *part.*, *see* dēicio.
dēicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum (de + iacio), *v. a.*, throw down, disappoint.
deinceps, successively.
dēlātus, *part.*, *see* **dēfero**.
dēlectus, -ūs (deligo), *m.*, a levy; *delectum habere*, to enrol troops.
dēleo, -ēre, -lēvi, -lētum, *v. a.*, destroy, annihilate.
dēligo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, bind up, bind fast.
dēligo, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, *v. a.*, choose.
dēmitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send *or* let down; *se demittere*, to descend.
dēmonstro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, show, point out, describe.
dēnuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, declare, give notice of, order.
dēpello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *v. a.*, drive away, remove.
dēpōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, lay aside, deposit.
dēpopulor, -āri, -populātus sum, *v. dep.*, to ravage, lay waste.
dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.*, intercessor.
dēprecor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, beg off, beg one not to.
dēprehendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, seize upon, catch.
dērogo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, take away, withdraw.
descendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. n.*, descend, have recourse to.
dēsero, -ere, -ui, -tum, *v. a.*, abandon.
dēsertor, -ōris (desero), *m.*, runaway, deserter.
dēsertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, solitary, waste.
dēsidia, -ae, *f.*, idleness.
dēsisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *v. n.*, cease, stop.
despectus, *part.*, *see* **despicio**.
dēspēro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. n. and a.*, lose hope, despair.
dēspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *v. a.*, disdain, despise.
dēsum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*, be wanting, fail.
dēterreo, -ēre, -terrui, -terri-

tum, *v. a.*, frighten from, prevent.
dētestor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, curse, call down curses upon.
dētraho, -ere, -traxi, -tractum, *v. a.*, withdraw, remove, detach.
dētrīmentum, -i (de + tero), *n.*, damage, loss.
deus, -i, *m.*, god.
dēvoco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, call down; *in dubium devocāre*, to imperil.
dēvoveo, -ēre, -vōvi, -vōtum, *v. a.*, vow, devote, consecrate.
dexter, -era *and* -ra, -erum *and* -rum, *adj.*, on the right-hand side, right.
dīco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, say; *diem dicere*, name, appoint a day.
dico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, devote, give up to.
dīdūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, draw apart, divide, disperse.
diēs, -ēi, *m.* (*sometimes f. in sing.*), day.
differo, differre, distuli, dīlātum, *v. a. and n.*, carry different ways, scatter, differ.
difficilis, -e, *adj.*, difficult.
difficultās, -ātis, *f.*, difficulty.
diffīdo, -ere, -fīsus sum, *v. n.*, *semi-dep.*, distrust, despair of.
diffundo, -ere, -fūdi, -fūsum, *v. a.*, spread out.
dignitās, -ātis, *f.*, dignity, prestige.
dīlectus, -a, -um, *part.*, *see* **dīligō**.
dīligenter, *adv.*, carefully, exactly.
dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, care, carefulness, attention.
dīligo, -ere, -lexi, -lectum (dī + lego), *v. a.*, esteem highly, love.
dīmico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. n.*, fight, engage.
dīmidius, -a, -um (medius), *adj.*, half; *dīmidium, -i, n.*, the half.
dīmitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, to send in different directions, to despatch, dismiss, let slip, abandon.
dīrectus, -a, -um, *adj.*, straight, upright.
dīrigo, -ere, -rexi, -rectum, *v. a.*, draw up (*the line of battle*).
dīripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum (rapio), *v. a.*, tear asunder, spoil, plunder.
discēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, depart.
discessus, -ūs, *m.*, departure.
disciplīna, -ae, *f.*, training, learning, discipline.
disco, -ere, didici, *v. a.*, learn (*by study*).
discrīmen, -inis, *n.*, difference, risk, danger, crisis.
dispār, -paris, *adj.*, unequal.
dispergo, -ere, -si, -sum, *v. a.*, disperse.
dispersus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered.
dispicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *v. n. and a.*, discern.
dispōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, set in different places, draw up, arrange.
disputo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

v. a. and n., investigate, discuss.
dissensio, -ōnis, *f.*, dispute, disagreement.
dissentio, -īre, -si, -sum, *v. n.*, differ, disagree.
dissipo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, disperse, scatter.
distribuo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a.*, distribute, assign.
diū, *adv.*, for a long time.
dīversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, in different directions, remote, different, separate.
dīvido, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsum, *v. a.*, divide, separate.
dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, divine.
do, dare, dedi, datum, *v. a.*, give.
doceo, -ēre, -ui, -ctum, *v. a.*, teach, demonstrate, prove, inform, tell, state.
doleo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. a. and n.*, grieve for, take to heart.
dolor, -ōris, *m.*, pain, grief.
domicilium, -i, *n.*, dwelling.
dominus, -i, *m.*, master, lord, owner.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home.
dōs, -ōtis, *f.*, dowry.
dubito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. n.*, doubt, hesitate.
dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful; *as noun, dubium, -i, n.*, uncertainty, risk.
ducenti, -ae, -a, *card. adj.*, two hundred.
dūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, lead, hold, consider, reckon.
dum, *conj.*, while, until.
duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, two.
duodecim (duo + decem), *num. adj.*, twelve.
duplico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, double.
dūritia, -ae, *f.*, hardness.
dūro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, harden, make hardy.
dux, ducis, *c.*, leader, guide.

ē, *see* **ex**.
eā (*sc.* parte *or* via), (is), *adv.*, on that side, by that way, there.
ēdisco, -ere, -didici, *v. a.*, learn by heart.
effectus, *part.*, *see* **efficio**.
effero, efferre, extuli, ēlātum, *v. a.*, bring out, publish; *in pass.*, be elated, inspirited.
efficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, accomplish, cause, make, complete, render, produce, form.
effugio, -ere, -fūgi, *v. n. and a.*, escape.
egeo, -ēre, -ui, *v. n.* (*with abl. or gen.*), lack, need, be in want of.
egestās, -ātis (egeo), *f.*, neediness, extreme poverty.
ēgi, *perf.*, *see* **ago**.
ego, mei, *pron.*, I.
ēgredior, -i, -gressus sum (e + gradior), *v. dep.*, come *or* go out, depart.
ēgressus, -ūs, *m.*, going out, departure, way out.
ēicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, throw out, cast out, cast.
ēiusmodi (is + modus), of that kind, of such a kind.
elephantus, -i (*and* elephas, -antis), *m.*, elephant.
ēlicio, -ere, -licui *and* -lexi,

-licitum, *v. a.*, entice *or* draw out.
ēmitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send out.
enim, *conj.*, for.
eō (is), *adv.*, thither, therefore.
eo, īre, īvi *or* ii, itum, *v. n*, go.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
epistola, -ae, *f.*, letter.
epulae, -ārum, *f.* (*in pl. only*), banquet, feast.
eques, -itis (equus), *m.*, horseman, (*Roman*) knight; equites, -um, cavalry, 'Knights' (*of Gaul*).
equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry.
equus, -i, *m.*, horse.
ērigo, -ere, -rexi, -rectum, *v. a.*, raise *or* set up.
ēripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, *v. a.*, snatch away, seize; *se eripere*, flee, escape.
et, *conj.*, and, also; *et . . . et*, both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, also, even, still.
etiamsi, *conj.*, even if, although.
etsi, *conj.*, although.
ēventus, -ūs (e + venio), *m.*, issue, result.
ēvoco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, call out, summon, draw forth.
ēx, ē, *prep. with abl.*, out of, of; *ex consuētūdine*, according tc custom.
exactus, *part.*, *see* exigo.
exāmino, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (examen, the tongue of the balance), *v. a.*, weigh in the balance, examine.
exanimo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, kill.
exaudio, -īre, -īvi *and* -ii, -ītum, *v. a.*, catch the sound of (*perhaps* hear clearly).
excēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n. and a.*, go out, withdraw, leave.
excello, -ere, -cellui, -celsum, *v. n.*, excel.
excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tall, high.
excipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a.*, catch, take, capture, relieve.
excito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, raise, build, arouse, incite.
exclūdo, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum (ex + claudo), *v. a.*, shut out, cut off, prevent, stop.
excrucio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, torture.
excūsātio, -ōnis, *f.*, excuse.
exerceo, -ēre, -ui, -itum (ex + arceo), *v. a.*, employ, keep busy, drill, exercise (*troops*).
exercitus, -ūs (exerceo), *m.*, army.
exigo, -ere, -ēgi, -actum (ex + ago), bring to an end, complete.
exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small.
existimātio, -ōnis, *f.*, judgment, opinion.
existimo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, consider, judge, think.
exitus, -ūs (exeo), *m.*, issue, end, result.
expedītus, *adj.*, unimpeded, without baggage, lightly equipped.
expello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *v. a.*, drive out, banish.
experior, -īri, expertus sum,

v. dep., try, make proof of.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, scout, spy.

explōrātus, ascertained, sure; *prō explōrātō*, for a certain fact.

explōro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, reconnoitre, find out.

expugnātio, -ōnis, *f.*, storming.

exsisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *v. n.*, to come forth, arise, emerge.

exspecto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, await, expect.

exstruo, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, build up, raise.

exterus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*used in pl.*), outward.

extrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, outside of.

extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl.* of exterus), furthest, extreme.

facile, *adv.*, easily.

facilis, -e (facio), *adj.*, easy.

facinus, -oris (facio), *n.*, deed, crime, outrage.

facio, -ere, fēci, factum, *v. a.*, do, make; *aliquem certiorem facere*, inform.

factio, -ōnis, *f.*, faction, party.

facultās, -ātis, *f.*, means, opportunity, resource.

fāgus, -i, *f.*, beech-tree.

falsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, false.

fāma, -ae (for, fari), *f.*, report, rumour, tradition, tidings.

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, famine.

familia, -ae, *f.*, household, servants, family; *paterfamiliae*, the master of the house.

familiāris, -e, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to a household *or* family; *as noun*, *m.*, an intimate friend.

fas, *n.*, *indecl.*, (*what is*) right (*in the sight of the gods*).

fātum, -i, *n.*, destiny, fate.

faveo, -ēre, fāvi, fautum, *v. n.*, *with dat.*, favour, befriend.

fēlīcitās, -ātis, *f.*, success.

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, female, woman.

fera, -ae, *f.*, wild animal.

ferē, *adv.*, nearly, usually, generally.

fero, ferre, tuli, lātum, *v. a.*, to bear, bring, endure, undergo, assert, say, obtain, receive.

ferrum, -i, *n.*, iron.

fertilis, -e, *adj.*, fertile.

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild.

fidēs, -ei, *f.*, faith, confidence, loyalty, word of honour, protection; *fidem facere*, to gain credence, belief.

figūra, -ae, *f.*, form, shape.

fīlius, -i, *m.*, son.

fingo, -ere, finxi, fictum, *v. a.*, form, devise, frame, pretend.

fīnio, -īre, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum (finis), *v. a.*, fix the limits of, determine.

fīnis, -is, *m.* (*and f.*), border, limit, end; *in plur.*, territory; *primi fines*, the frontiers.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bordering, neighbouring; *as noun*, *finitimi*, *-ōrum*, *m.*, neighbours.

fīō, fieri, factus sum, *v.* (*used as passive of* facio *in pres.*,

fut., *imperf. tenses*), be made, become, take place, happen.
firmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, make strong, strengthen, secure.
firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, powerful.
flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame.
flecto, -ere, -xi, -xum, *v. a.*, bend.
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.
foedus, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty.
fore, *fut. inf.*, *see* **sum**.
forma, -ae, *f.*, shape.
forte, *adv.*, perchance, by chance.
fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, prize; *in plur.*, possessions, property.
fortūnātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, prosperous, fortunate.
fovea, -ae, *f.*, a pit (*for catching wild animals*).
frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying on, *with abl.*
frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold.
frons, -tis, *f.*, forehead.
fructus, -ūs, *m.*, produce, fruit; (*of money*), profit, income.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of corn; *res frumentaria*, corn supply.
frūmentātio, -ōnis, *f.*, foraging.
frūmentor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, forage.
frūmentum, -i, *n.*, corn, grain.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight, rout; *ex fuga*, after, in flight.
fugio, -ere, fūgi, fugitum, *v. n. and a.*, to flee, take to flight.
fūnebris, -e, *adj.*, funeral.
fūnus, -eris, *n.*, funeral, burial.
furtum, -i, *n.*, theft.

gens, -tis, *f.*, clan, nation.
genus, -eris, *n.*, birth, descent, sort, race (*of beings*).
gero, -ere, gessi, gestum, *v. a.*, carry on; *in pass.*, be going on; *gerere bellum*, to wage war; *res gestae*, what has happened, events.
gladius, -i, *m.*, sword.
grātia, -ae, *f.*, favour, influence.
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, acceptable, agreeable, pleasing.
gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe.

habeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, have, account, hold, consider; *orationem habēre*, to deliver a speech.
haud, *adv.*, not.
hērēditās, -ātis (heres), *f.*, heirship, inheritance.
hīberna, -ōrum, *n.*, winter-quarters; (*really an adj.*, hibernus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to winter, *sc.* castra).
hĭc, haec, hōc, *demonstr. pron.*, this, the latter, he.
hīc, *adv.*, here.
hiemo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (hiemps), *v. n.*, pass the winter, winter.
hiemps, hiemis, *f.*, winter.
hinc, *adv.*, from this place, hence.

homo, -inis, *c.*, human being, man.
honor, -ōris, *m.*, honour, esteem, respect.
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.
hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, exhort, urge, encourage.
hospes, -itis, *m.*, guest.
hospitium, -i, *n.*, ties of hospitality, friendship.
hostis, -is, *com.*, enemy.
hūc, *adv.*, to this place, hither.
humilis, -e (humus), *adj.*, humble, lowly, weak.

iacio, -ere, iēci, iactum, *v. a.*, cast, hurl, fling, throw.
iactūra, -ae, *f.*, loss, sacrifice, expense, cost.
iaculum, -i (iacio), *n.*, dart, javelin.
iam, *adv.*, now, already.
ibī̆ (is), *adv.*, in that place, there.
idcircō, *adv.*, for that reason.
īdem, eadem, idem, *pron.*, the same.
idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, convenient, suitable.
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.
ignōro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, be ignorant of.
illātus, *part.*, *see* **infero**.
ille, -a, -ud, *adj. and pron.*, that, he, she, it.
illō, *adv.*, thither.
illustris, -e, *adj.*, illustrious, honourable.
imber, -bris, *m.*, rain.
imitor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, imitate.
immānis, -e, *adj.*, enormous, huge.
immineo, -ēre, *v. n.*, be close at hand, imminent.
immitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send against, cast, hurl.
immolo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, offer up, sacrifice.
immortālis, -e, *adj.*, immortal.
immūnitās, -ātis, *f.*, exemption, freedom (*from public charges and services*).
imparātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unprepared.
impedīmentum, -i (impedio), *n.*, hindrance; *plur.*, *impedīmenta, -ōrum*, baggage-train (*of an army*), baggage.
impedio, -īre, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum (in + pes), *v. a.*, entangle, hamper, hinder.
impedītus, -a, -um, *part.*, *see* impedio, encumbered (*with baggage*); *as adj.*, difficult (*of passage*), troublesome, intricate.
impello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *v. a.*, urge, impel, instigate.
imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, commander-in-chief.
imperātum, -i, *n.*, command, order.
imperfectus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unfinished, incomplete; *imperfectā re*, without accomplishing his object.
imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, inexperienced, ignorant, unskilled.
imperium, -i, *n.*, a command, authority, control, power, sovereignty.
impero, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a. and n.*, command, order, levy.
impetro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.* (in + patro), obtain a request.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, assault, attack, charge, impetuosity.

impius, -a, -um, *adj.*, without reverence, impious, wicked.

implōro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, entreat, appeal to.

imprōvīsum, -i, *n.* (in + pro + video), that which is unforeseen; *adverbially, de imprōviso*, suddenly, unexpectedly.

imprōvīsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unforeseen.

imprūdens, -entis, *adj.*, unwitting, unawares.

imprūdentia, -ae, *f.*, ignorance.

impūbes, -eris, *and* impūbis, -is, *adj.*, under age, unmarried.

impulsus, -a, -um, *part.*, *see* impello.

impulsus, -ūs (impello), *m.*, instigation.

in, *prep. with acc.*, into, against, to, towards, for; *with abl.*, in, on, upon, among, within.

inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, void.

incautus, -a, -um, *adj.*, off one's guard, unsuspecting.

incendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, set fire to, kindle, burn.

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, doubtful.

incido, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum (in + cado), *v. n.*, fall upon, happen, occur.

incipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a. and n.*, begin.

incolo, -ere, -colui, *v. a. and n.*, inhabit, dwell.

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, safe, unharmed.

incommodē, *adv.*, disastrously, unfortunately.

incommodum, -i, *n.*, disaster, misfortune.

incursio, -ōnis (incurro), *f.*, invasion, attack.

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence, then.

indicium, -i, *n.*, information.

indico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, point out, show, declare, reveal, mention.

indīco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, appoint, proclaim.

indignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy.

ineo, -īre, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, *v. n. and a.*, go into, enter; *consilium inire*, to form a plan.

inermis, -e, *adj.*, unarmed.

infāmia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dishonour.

infectus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccomplished.

infensus, -a, -um (in + fendo), *adj.*, hostile.

inferior, -us (inferus, infra), *comp. adj.*, lower.

infero, inferre, intuli, illātum, *v. a.*, bring against, set upon, mount, bring forward, introduce; *bellum inferre*, to make, to wage war; *vulnus inf.*, to inflict a wound; *in ignem inf.*, to throw into; *spem inf.*, to hold out a hope.

infestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile.

inficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, dye, stain.

infīnītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unlimited, boundless.
infirmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak.
inflecto, -ere, -flexi, -flexum, *v. a.*, bend.
influo, -ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, *v. n.*, flow into.
infrā, *prep. with acc.*, below, under.
inimīcitia, -ae, *f.*, enmity, hostility.
inimīcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unfriendly; *as noun, inimīcus, -i, m.*, enemy, rival.
inīquus, -a, -um (in + aequus), *adj.*, not level, unfavourable.
initium, -i, *n.* (in + eo), beginning, commencement.
iniūria, -ae (in + ius), *f.*, injury, wrong, oppression; *iniurias inferre*, to inflict injuries.
iniussū, *m.* (*only in abl.*), without orders.
innocens, -ntis, *adj.*, harmless, guiltless, innocent.
inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, lack.
inopīnans, -antis, *adj.*, off one's guard, not expecting, unawares.
inquam, *3rd sing.*, inquit, *v. def.*, say.
insequor, -i, -cutus sum, *v. dep.*, follow up, pursue.
insidiae, -ārum (in + sedeo), *f.*, ambush, ambuscade.
insidior, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, lay an ambush, lie in wait for.
insisto, -ere, -stiti, *v. n.*, devote oneself to.
instans, -antis, *adj.*, pressing, imminent.
instīgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, urge on, incite.
instituo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum (in + statuo), determine.
institūtum, -i, *n.*, manner of life, custom.
insto, -āre, -stiti, *v. n.*, press forward, impend, threaten.
instrūmentum, -i (in + struo), *n.*, tool, instrument, implement.
instruo, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, draw up, fit out, arrange.
insula, -ae, *f.*, island.
integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, uninjured, whole, untired, fresh.
intellego, -ere, -exi, -ectum, *v. a.*, understand, perceive.
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, during; *inter se*, mutually.
interdīco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. n.*, forbid, prohibit.
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.
intereo, -īre, -ii, -itum, *v. n.*, die, perish.
interficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum (inter + facio), *v. a.*, kill, slay.
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.
intermitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send *or* leave between, leave vacant, leave off; *in pass.*, stop.
interpōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, put *or* set between; *fidem interponere*, to pledge one's word, to intervene.
interpretor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, explain, expound.
intersum, -esse, -fui, be among, take part in; in-

terest (*impersonal*), is of importance, concerns; *magni interesse*, to be of great importance.

intervenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *v. n.*, come up, arrive.

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within.

introrsus (intro + versus), *adv.*, towards the interior, inwards.

intuli, *see* **infero**.

intus, *adv.*, on the inside, within.

invenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *v. a.*, discover, find.

inventor, -ōris, *m.*, author, discoverer, inventor.

invīto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, invite.

ipse, -a, -um, *demonst. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself, very, just, actual.

īrācundia, -ae, *f.*, passion, hastiness of temper.

irrumpo, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *v. n. and a.*, break *or* rush in, attack.

is, ea, id, *demonst. pron.*, that, he, she, it, such.

ita, *adv.*, in this manner, so, thus; *non ita multum*, not very much.

itaque, *conj.*, and so, accordingly, therefore.

item, *adv.*, also, likewise.

iter, itineris (eo, *sup. stem* it-), *n.*, journey, march, road, way.

iubeo, -ēre, iussi, iussum, *v. a.*, bid, command, order.

iūdicium, -i (iudex), *n.*, judgment, decision, opinion.

iūdico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (iudex), *v. a. and n.*, decide, judge.

iugum, -i (iungo), *n.*, yoke, ridge, range (*of mountains*).

iūmentum, -i (iugum), *n.*, beast of burden.

iūro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a. and n.*, swear.

iūs, iūris, *n.*, (*legal*) right, authority; *ius dicere*, to administer justice.

ius iūrandum, iūris iūrandi (ius + iuro), *n.*, oath.

iussus, -a, -um, *part.*, *see* **iubeo**.

iustitia, -ae, *f.*, justice.

iustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just, lawful.

iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.*, the youth, the fighting men.

iuvo, -āre, iūvi, iūtum, *v. a. and n.*, help.

lābor, -i, lapsus sum, *v. dep.*, slip, go astray, be disappointed.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, labour, toil, exertion.

labōro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. n.*, labour, be hard pressed.

lăbrum, -i, *n.*, a lip, rim, tip.

lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk.

lacesso, -ere, -īvi *and* -ii, -ītum, *v. a.*, attack, provoke.

laedo, -ere, laesi, laesum, *v. a.*, to hurt, violate.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone.

largior, -īri, -ītus sum, *v. dep.*, bestow, yield.

lātē, *adv.*, far and wide, widely.

latĕbraae, -ārum, *f.*, (*in pl.*) hiding-places.
lātitūdo, -inis (lātus), *f.*, breadth, width.
latrōcinium, -i, *n.*, freebooting, robbery; *in pl.*, freebooting expeditions, forays.
latus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.
lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wide, broad.
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, credit.
lēgātio, -ōnis (lēgo), *f.*, embassy.
lēgātus, -i, *m.* (lēgo), ambassador, envoy, commander, staff-officer.
legio, -ōnis, *f.* (lego, to choose), division of the Roman army, legion.
legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, legionary, belonging to a legion.
levitās, -ātis (levis), *f.*, lightness, fickleness.
levo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, lighten, ease, relieve.
lex, lēgis, *f.*, law.
libenter, *adv.*, willingly.
līberi, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.
licet, licuit *and* licitum est, *v. n. impers.*, it is lawful, it is allowed, permissible.
līs, lītis, *f.*, dispute, lawsuit; *lītem aestimāre,* to assess the damages.
littera, -ae, *f.*, letter of the alphabet; *pl.*, letter, dispatch; *litterae publicae*, public records, official documents.
lixa, -ae, *m.*, sutler, camp-follower.
locus, -i, *m.*, place, position, opportunity, post; *pl.*, *loca*, districts; *custōdis loco*, as a guard; *servōrum loco*, as slaves.
longē, *adv.*, far, by far.
longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, distant, long, prolonged.
longitūdo, -inis, *f.*, length.
longius (*comp. of* longē), *adv.*, too far, farther, some distance.
longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, tedious.
loquor, -i, -cūtus sum, *v. dep.*, speak, say, address.
lux, lūcis, *f.*, light; *prima luce*, at daybreak.

magis, *adv.*, more; *eo magis*, *lit.* more by that (much), *i. e.* the more so.
magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate.
magnificus, -a, -um (magnus + facio), *adj.*, grand, splendid, magnificent.
magnitūdo, -inis (magnus), *f.*, greatness, size, great amount, force, violence.
magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, important, serious; *magna itinera*, forced marches; *magni interesse*, to be of great importance.
māior, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* magnus).
māiōrēs, -um, *m. plur. noun*, ancestors, forefathers.
maleficium, -i, *n.*, evil deed, crime, mischief, injury.
malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, evil.
mandārunt *for* mandāvērunt.
mandātum, -i, *n.*, command.
mando, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

v. a., commit (*to any one's charge*), entrust, order; *litteris mandāre*, to commit to writing.
māne, *indecl. n.*, morning; *as adv.*, in the morning.
maneo, -ēre, mansi, mansum, *v. n.*, stay, remain.
manipulus, -i, *m.*, maniple, company of soldiers.
mansuēfacio, -ere, -fēci, -factum (*part. of* mansuesco = manu suesco, to accustom to be handled, + facio), *v. a.*, tame; *pass.*, mansuēfīō, -fieri, -factus sum, grow tame.
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, band, body (*of soldiers*).
maris, *see* mās.
mās, maris, *adj.*, male; *as noun*, a male.
mātūrē, *adv.*, early, soon.
mātūresco, -ere, -ui, grow ripe.
maximē, *sup. adv.*, chiefly, especially.
mediōcriter, *adv.*, moderately.
medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle.
membrum, -i, *n.*, limb.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory, recollection.
mens, mentis, *f.*, mind.
mensis, -is, *m.*, month.
mensūra, -ae (mētior), *f.*, measure, extent.
mentio, -ōnis, *f.*, mention.
mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, trader, merchant.
mercātūra, -ae, *f.*, commerce, trade.
mereo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, deserve, merit, incur.
mereor, -ēri, -itus sum, *v. dep.*, deserve, merit, incur.
metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear.
mīles, -itis, *m.*, a soldier.
mīlitāris, -e (miles), *adj.*, belonging to a soldier *or* soldiering; *gloria rei militaris*, military reputation.
mīlitia, -ae (miles), *f.*, military service.
mille, *num. adj.*, thousand; *in plur. it is a noun*, milia *or* millia, thousands; *mille passus*, a thousand paces, a mile; *duo milia passuum*, two miles (passuum *is sometimes omitted*).
minimē, *adv.*, by no means.
minimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*super. of* parvus), least, slightest.
minor, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* parvus), less.
minuo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a. and n.*, make smaller, lessen, settle.
minus, *comp. adv.*, less, the less.
mīror, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, wonder, wonder at.
miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched.
missū (*only in abl.*), *m.*, a sending, despatch.
mitto, -ere, mīsi, missum, *v. a.*, to send, despatch, throw.
modo, *adv.*, but, only, lately.
modus, -i, *m.*, measure, quantity, manner; *in modum*, after the manner.
moneo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, advise, warn.
morbus, -i, *m.*, disease.
morior, -i, mortuus sum, *v. dep.*, die.

moror, -āri, -ātus sum (mora), *v. dep.*, to delay, hinder.
mors, -tis, *f.*, death.
mortuus, -a, -um (*part. of* morior), dead.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, fashion, habit.
mōtus, -ūs, *m.* (moveo), motion, movement, disturbance.
moveo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *v. a.*, move; *castra movēre*, to break up a camp.
mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.
multitūdo, -inis, *f.*, crowd, the multitude, *i.e.* the people in general.
multum, *adv.*, greatly.
multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; *in plur.*, many.
mundus, -i, *m.*, world, universe.
mūnio, -īre, -īvi *or* **-ii, -ītum,** *v. a.*, fortify, guard.
mūnītio, -ōnis (munio), *f.*, fortifying, fortification.
mūnītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fortified, safe.
mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service.
mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall.
mutilus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mutilated, destitute of.

nactus, -a, -um, *part. of* nanciscor.
nam, *conj.*, for.
namque, *conj.*, for.
nanciscor, -i, nactus *and* **nanctus sum,** *v. dep.*, obtain, get.
nascor, -i, nātus sum, *v. dep.*, be born, arise.
nātālis, -e (nascor), *adj.*, belonging to one's birth; *dies nātālis*, birthday.
nātio, -ōnis (nascor), *f.*, race (*of people*), nation.
nātīvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, natural.
nātūra, -ae (nascor), *f.*, nature, shape.
nātus, -a, -um, *part.*, *see* **nascor.**
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship.
nē, *adv. and conj.*, not, that . . . not, lest; *ne . . . quidem*, not even.
ne, *an enclitic particle, indicating that the sentence is a question.*
nec, *see* **neque.**
necessāriō, *adv.*, necessarily.
necessitās, -ātis, *f.*, necessity.
neglego, -ere, -xi, -ctum (nec + lego), *v.a.*, disregard, make light of.
nego, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ne + aio), *v. n. and a.*, say no, deny, refuse, say that . . . not.
negōtium, -i (nec + otium), *n.*, business, matter.
nēmō, nēminem, nullĭus, nēmini, nullo (ne + homo), no man, no one.
neque *or* **nec,** *conj.*, and not, nor; *neque* (*nec*) . . . *neque* (*nec*), neither . . . nor.
nervus, -i, *m.*, sinew.
neu *or* **nē-ve** (= et ne), *conj.*, and not, nor, and lest.
nex, necis, *f.*, (*violent*) death.
nihil, *n. indecl.*, nothing.
nihilum, *n.*, nothing; *esp. as adv.*, *nihilo minus*, none the less.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.
nītor, -i, nīsus *and* nixus sum, *v. dep.*, strive, endeavour.
nōbilis, -e, *adj.*, of high birth, noble; *as noun, nōbiles, -ium, m.*, the nobles.
nōbilitas, -ātis, *f.*, nobility.
nōbiscum = cum nobis.
nocens, -entis (*pres. part. of* noceo), *as adj.*, guilty; *as noun*, evil-doer.
noceo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. n.*, hurt, harm, injure.
noctū (nox), *adv.*, at night, by night.
nōdus, -i, *m.*, knot, a joint.
nōlo, nolle, nōlui (non + volo), *v. n.*, be unwilling.
nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nondum, *adv.*, not yet.
nonnullus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.
nonnumquam, *adv.*, sometimes.
nosco, -ere, nōvi, nōtum, *v.a.*, get to know; *in perf.*, know.
noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.*, our; *plur., nostri, -ōrum, m.*, our men (*i.e.* the Romans).
nōtitia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge.
nōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, known.
novem, *num. adj.*, nine.
nōvi, *see* nosco.
novitās, -ātis, *f.* (novus), newness, strangeness.
novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new; *re novā*, by the novelty of the occurrence; *in superl.*, last, latest; *novissimum agmen*, the rear-guard.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
noxa, -ae (noceo), *f.*, injurious act, crime.
nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bare, naked.
nullus, -a, -um, *adj.*, no, none.
nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divine will, god.
numerus, -i, *m.*, number, estimation, position; *aliquo esse numero*, to be of some account.
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, announce.
nuntius, -i, *m.*, messenger, message.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of; *ob eam causam*, for that reason, consequently.
obeo, -īre, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, *v. n. and a.*, go to meet.
obicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, hinder, oppose.
obiectus, -a, -um (*part. of* obicio), *as adj.*, opposite to.
oblātus, *part. of* offero.
observo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, pay attention to, heed, observe, keep.
obses, -idis (ob + sedeo), *com.*, a hostage.
obsessio, -ōnis (ob + sedeo), *f.*, siege.
obtineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *v. a.*, have, hold, possess.
obtuli, *see* offero.
occāsio, -ōnis (ob + cado), *f.*, opportunity.
occāsus, -ūs (ob + cado), *m.*, setting.
occīdo, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum

(ob + caedo), *v. a.*, kill, slay.
occido, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum (ob + cado), *v. n.*, fall, perish.
occultātio, -ōnis, *f.*, concealment.
occulto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (occulo), *v. a.*, conceal, hide.
occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hidden, secret; *ex occultō*, secretly.
occupo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ob + capio), *v. a.*, take possession of, seize upon, engage in.
occurro, -ere, -ri, -sum, *v. n.*, run up to, meet, come upon.
ōceanus, -i, *m.*, the ocean.
octō, *card. num. adj.*, eight.
oculus, -i, *m.*, eye.
odium, -i, *n.*, hatred.
offendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, strike at, injure.
offero, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, *v. a.*, present, offer.
officium, -i, *n.*, duty, allegiance.
omitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, neglect, omit.
omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether.
omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every.
opem, opis (*nom. and dat. sing. not found*), power, aid, assistance; *opēs*, resources.
opīnio, -ōnis, *f.*, belief, expectation, reputation.
oppidum, -i, *n.*, town.
oppōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, confront, place opposite.
opportūnitās, -ātis, *f.*, fitness, convenience, advantage.
opprimo, -ere, -si, -sum (ob + premo), *v. a.*, to crush, overwhelm, take by surprise.
oppugnātio, -ōnis, *f.*, attack, assault.
oppugno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, attack, assault.
optātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, agreeable, eagerly looked for.
opus, -eris, *n.*, work, fortification.
ordo, -inis, *m.*, line, rank. See, too, Introd. p. 14.
orior, -iri, ortus sum (*with some forms, 3rd conj.*), *v. dep.*, arise, begin.
ōro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, beg, entreat, implore.
ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth.
ostendo, -ere, -di, -sum *and* -tum, *v. a.*, show.

pāco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (pax), *v. a.*, pacify, subdue.
paene, *adv.*, almost.
pāgus, -i, *m.*, canton, district, village.
palam, *adv.*, openly, undisguisedly.
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp.
pār, paris, *adj.*, equal.
parco, -ere, peperci *and* parsi, parsum, *v. n.*, spare.
parens, -entis (pario), *com.*, parent.
pāreo, -ēre, -ui, pāritum, *v. n.*, obey, submit to.
pario, -ere, peperi, partum, *v. a.*, bring forth, produce, bring about, gain.
paro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, make ready, prepare, acquire.

pars, partis, *f.*, part, division, direction; *in utramque partem*, on both sides, in either direction; *ex parte*, partly, in some measure.

partio, -īre, -ii *and* -īvi, -ītum, *v. a.*, partior, -īri, partītus sum, *v. dep.* (pars), share, divide, distribute.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.*, trifling, little, young; *ab parvulis*, from childhood.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace (*about five of our feet*, i. e. *a double pace*). *See* **mille**.

pateo, -ēre, -ui, *v. n.*, lie open, be open, stretch, extend.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father.

paterfamiliae (*or* familiās), *m.*, head of a family.

patientia, -ae (patior), *f.*, endurance, hardihood, submission.

patior, -i, passus sum, *v. dep.*, suffer, allow.

paucitās, -ātis (paucus), *f.*, fewness, scarcity.

paucus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *used in pl.*, few, a few (*chiefly as noun*).

paulātim (paulum), *adv.*, little by little, gradually.

paulisper (paulum), *adv.*, for a short time.

paulō (*abl. of* paulus), *adv.*, by a little, a little, somewhat.

paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat; *paulum modo*, just for a little.

pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.

pecūnia, -ae, pecus (*because cattle was the usual means of exchange in early times*), *f.*, money, sum of money.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, flock, herd, cattle.

peditātus, -ūs (pes), *m.*, foot-soldiers, infantry.

pellis, -is, *f.*, hide, skin.

pendo, -ere, pependi, pensum, *v. a.*, to weigh out (*payments were made originally by weighing out metal*), *hence* to pay.

penitus, *adv.*, deeply, into the inmost parts, entirely.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by, by means of, owing to, by reason of; *per se*, in *or* of itself.

perago, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, *v. a.*, go through with, complete, finish.

perceptus, *part.*, *see* **percipio**.

percipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a.*, learn, perceive, gain, hear, listen to.

perdisco, -ere, -didici, *v. a.*, learn thoroughly, by heart.

perdūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, to lead through, prolong, to win over, carry over.

pereo, -īre, -ii *and* -īvi, -itum, *v. n.*, perish.

perficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum (per + facio), *v. a.*, accomplish, complete, finish.

perīclitor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, hazard, make proof of, to be exposed to danger.

perīculum, -i, *n.*, danger, trial.

perluo, -ere, -lui, -lūtum,

v. a., wash; *in pass.*, bathe.

permaneo, -ēre, -mansi, -mansum, *v. n.*, abide, continue, persevere.

permitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, entrust, suffer, permit, allow.

permōtus, -a, -um, *part. of* permoveo; influenced, overcome.

permoveo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *v. a.*, move thoroughly, move deeply, prevail on.

perpetuus, -a, -um (per + peto), *adj.*, continuing, unbroken, far-stretching; *in perpetuum*, for ever.

perquīro, -ere, -sīvi, -sītum (per + quaero), *v. a.*, inquire after diligently.

perrumpo, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *v. a. and n.*, break through.

persuādeo, -ēre, -si, -sum, *v. a. and n.*, to persuade, convince.

perterreo, -ēre, -rui, -ritum, *v. a.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify.

pertineo, -ēre, -ui (per + teneo), *v. n.*, reach, extend, belong to, concern.

perturbo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, throw into confusion, confuse.

pervenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *v. n.*, come to, arrive at.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.

peto, -ere, -īvi *and* -ii, -ītum, *v. a.*, seek, ask, request, beg.

pīlum, -i, *n.*, javelin.

pīlus, -i, *m.*, the first of the three maniples into which each cohort was divided; *primum pilum ducere*, to be chief centurion of a legion, primi pili centurio.

placidē, *adv.*, calmly.

plāco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, to reconcile, appease.

plānē, *adv.*, entirely, quite.

plēbēs, -is *and* -ei, *f.*, *and* plebs, -bis, *f.*, common folk, people (*opp. to the nobles*).

plērumque, *adv.*, for the most part, generally.

plērusque, -raque, -rumque, *adj.* (*used in pl.*), the most part, the majority, most.

plūs, plūris *and* plūrimus, -a, -um, *comp. and sup.* of multus.

pōculum, -i, *n.*, cup.

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty.

polliceor, -ēri, -itus sum, *v. dep.*, promise.

pollicitātio, -ōnis, *f.*, promise.

pondus, -eris (pendo), *n.*, weight.

pōno, -ere, posui, positum, *v. a.*, put, place, deposit; *in pass.*, rest on, depend on.

pons, pontis, *m.*, a bridge.

populor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, to lay waste, ravage.

populus, -i, *m.*, people.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.

positus, *part. of* pōno.

possessio, -ōnis, *f.*, possession, property.

possideo, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *v. a.*, own, occupy.

possum, posse, potui (potis + sum), *v. n. irreg.*, be able,

can ; *multum posse*, to have great influence.
post, *prep. with acc.*, behind, after.
post, *adv.*, after, afterwards.
posteā, *adv.*, after this *or* that, afterwards.
posteāquam, *conj.*, after (that).
posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, coming after, following, next.
postpōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, put off, postpone, lay aside.
postquam, *conj.*, after that.
postrēmō, *adv.*, at last, finally.
postulo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, demand, request.
potens, -tis, *adj.*, powerful.
potentia, -ae (potens), *f.*, influence.
potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power, opportunity, permission.
potior, -īri, -ītus sum, *v. dep.* (*with gen. or abl.*), to become master of, gain possession of.
potius, *comp. adv.*, rather.
praebeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, show, exhibit.
praeceptum, -i, *n.*, instruction, command.
praeceptus, -a, -um, *part. of* praecipio.
praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (prae + capio), *v. a.*, bid, order, direct.
praecipuē, *adv.*, chiefly, especially.
praecipuus, -a, -um (praecipio), *adj.*, special, chief.
praecurro, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *v. n. and a.*, run before, forward, hasten on before.
praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty.
praedico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, proclaim, assert.
praeficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum (prae + facio), *v. a.*, appoint to the command of.
praemitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send in advance.
praemium, -i, *n.*, reward, advantage.
praeoccupo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, seize beforehand.
praepōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, set in command of.
praeruptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, steep, precipitous.
praesentia, -ae, *f.*, present time.
praesertim, *adv.*, especially.
praesidium, -i (praeses), *n.*, defence, protection, reliance, a guard.
praestō, *adv.*, at hand ; *praesto esse*, to be at hand.
praesto, -āre, -stiti, -stitum, *and* -stātum, *v. n. and a.*, discharge, show.
praesum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*, am in command of, preside over.
praeter, *prep. with acc.*, except, contrary to.
praetereā, *adv.*, besides.
praetermitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, permit, omit, neglect.
precem (*no nom. or gen.*), *generally in plur.*, entreaty, prayer, imprecation.
premo, -ere, pressi, pressum, *v. a.*, press, press upon, oppress, crush.
prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.
prīmō, *adv.*, at first.

prīmum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; *quam prīmum*, as soon as possible.
prīmus, -a, -um, *sup. adj.*, the first, first; *primo vere*, in the beginning of spring; *in primis*, especially.
princeps, -ipis (primus + capio), *adj.*, first, chief; *as noun*, *m.*, a chief.
principātus, -ūs (princeps), *m.*, supremacy, chieftaincy, sovereignty.
prius, *comp. adv.*, before; *with* quam (*often written as one word*), before, before that.
prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private.
prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of, on account of, in consideration of, compared with, in accordance with, by way of, as.
probo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, prove, approve.
prōcēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, go forth, advance.
prōconsul, -is, *m.*, a proconsul. (*At the expiration of a consul's year of office, he was usually sent as* proconsul, *with military powers, to govern a province.*)
procul, *adv.*, in the distance, from, at a distance.
prōcumbo, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *v. n.*, sink down, fall, lie down.
prōcūro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum. *v. a.*, look after.
prōcurro, -ere (*and rarely* -cucurri), -curri, -cursum, *v. n.*, run, rush forward.
prōdeo, -īre, -ii, -itum (pro + eo), *v. n.*, come *or* go forth.
prōdesse, *see* **prōsum.**
prōditor, -ōris (prodo), *m.*, traitor.
prōdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a.*, to give forth, hand down, record, disclose.
proelium, -i, *n.*, battle.
profectio, -ōnis (proficiscor), *f.*, a setting out.
profectus, -a, -um, *part. of* proficiscor.
prōficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum (pro + facio), *v. n. and a.*, proceed, profit, accomplish.
proficiscor, -i, profectus sum, *v. dep.*, set out, start, depart.
profiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum (pro + fateor), *v. dep.*, declare publicly, promise, volunteer.
profugio, -ere, -fūgi, *v. n.*, flee.
prōgnātus, -a, -um, *part.* (pro + gnatus = natus, nascor), born, descended from; *as noun*, *m.*, a descendant.
prōgredior, -i, -gressus sum (pro + gradior), *v. dep.*, go forward, advance.
prohibeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum (pro + habeo), *v. a.*, hinder, prevent, defend, protect.
prōicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum (pro + iacio), *v. a.*, throw, fling away.
prōmiscuē, *adv.*, in common.
prōmissus, -a, -um (*part. of* prōmitto), *as adj.*, long, uncut.
prōnuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, announce, proclaim.
prope, *prep. with acc.*, near, nigh.

prope, *adv.*, near, nearly, almost.

prōpello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *v. a.*, drive back.

propero, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. n. and a.*, to hasten.

propinquitās, -ātis, *f.*, nearness, proximity, neighbourhood.

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, near; *as noun, propinquus, -i, m.*, a kinsman, relation.

prōpōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, set forth, place before, point out, offer.

proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, one's own; *as noun, proprium, -i, n.*, a peculiar mark, sign.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, by reason of, on account of.

prōpulso, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (pro + pello), *v. a.*, drive back, repel.

prōsequor, -i, -cūtus sum, *v. dep.*, pursue.

prospectus, -ūs, *m.*, view.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, *v. n.*, benefit.

prōtinus, *adv.*, forthwith.

prōvideo, -ēre, -vīdi, -vīsum, *v. n. and a.*, foresee, see to, provide for.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province *properly*, a sphere of command; *applied to districts ruled by a Roman governor*).

proximē, *adv.*, very recently.

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, nearest.

pūbes *and* pūber, -eris, *adj.*, grown up, adult; *as noun, pūberes, -um, m.*, men (*i.e. not* boys).

publicē, *adv.* (publicus), in the name of the State.

publicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the people, public; *res publica*, the Republic; *in publico*, in public; *in publicum*, in public, in view.

puerīlis, -e (puer), *adj.*, boyish, belonging to boyhood.

pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle, skirmish.

pugno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. n.*, fight.

purgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, exculpate, prove innocent.

puto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, consider, judge, think.

quā, *adv.*, by which way, where.

quādringenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, four hundred.

quaero, -ere, -sīvi, -sītum, *v. a.*, seek, ask.

quaestio, -ōnis (quaero), *f.*, examination, enquiry, trial.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.*, quaestor.

quaestus, -ūs (quaero), *m.*, gaining, acquisition.

quam, *adv. and conj.*, as, than; *quam primum*, as soon as possible.

quantō, *adv.*, by how much; *cf. quanto magis . . . , tanto brevius . . .*, the more . . . , the shorter.

quantum, *adv.*, how much; *quantum agri*, how much of land, *i. e.* all the land which . . . .

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, how great, how much.

quartus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fourth.
quartus decimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fourteenth.
quatuor *or* **quattuor**, *num. adj.*, four.
-que, *conj.* (*always joined to the end of the first word which it is to unite with what precedes*), and.
queror, -i, questus sum, *v. dep.*, complain.
qui, quae, quod, *rel.* (*used adjectively*), *interrog. and indef. pron.*, who, which, what, that, who? which? what? any.
quīcumque (*or* -cunque), quaecumque, quodcumque, *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever, all that.
quid, *adv.*, why?
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *indef. pron.*, a certain, one.
quidem, *adv.*, indeed; *nē . . . quidem*, not even.
quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest, repose.
quīn, *conj.*, but that, that not.
quīnam, quaenam, quidnam *or* quodnam, *pron. interrog.*, who? which? what? what, pray?
quindecim, *num. adj.*, fifteen.
quingenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, five hundred.
quinquāgintā, *num. adj.*, fifty.
quinque, *num. adj.*, five.
quintus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fifth.
quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what?
quis, qua, quid, *indef. pron.*, any one, anything; *ne quis qua, quid*, that no . . .
quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam, *indef. pron.*, any one, anything.
quisquam, quicquam *or* quidquam, *indef. pron.*, any, any one, anything.
quisque, quaeque, quodque, *indef. pron.*, each, every.
quō, *adv.*, where, whither.
quō, *conj.*, in order that, so that (with comparatives, cp. *quanto*).
quoad, *conj.*, till, until.
quod, *conj.*, because, the fact that.
quoniam, *conj.* (cum + iam), since, seeing that, whereas.
quoque, *conj.*, also.
quotannis, *adv.*, yearly, every year.
quotiens *or* **quotiēs** (quot), *adv.*, how often, as often as.

rādix, -īcis, *f.*, root.
rāmus, -i, *m.*, bough, branch.
rapīna, -ae, *f.*, pillage.
rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, few.
ratio, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account, plan, system, method, science.
ratis, -is, *f.*, raft.
recēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, fall back, retire.
recens, -tis, *adj.*, fresh, recent.
receptus, -ūs (re + capio), *m.*, retreat, refuge.
recessus, -ūs (re + cedo), *m.*, retreat.
recipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (re + capio), *v. a.*, receive, recover, admit; *se recipere*, to retreat.

rĕclīno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, lean, recline.
rectus, -a, -um, *adj.*, straight, upright; *rectā regione*, in a straight line.
recūso, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, refuse.
rēda, -ae, *f.*, carriage, chariot.
redisse, *see* redeo.
reddo, -ere, -didi, -ditum (re + do), *v. a.*, give back, restore, render, administer.
redeo, -īre, -ii, -itum (re + eo), *v. n.*, go back, be reduced to.
reditus, -ūs, *m.*, return.
redūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v.a.*, lead back, withdraw.
refero, referre, rettuli, relātum, *v. a.*, bear back, report; *gratiam referre*, to show one's gratitude, repay.
refugio, -ere, -fūgi, *v. n.*, flee away, avoid, shun.
regio, -ōnis (rego), *f.*, district, territory; *rectā regione*, in a straight line.
regnum, -i (rex), *n.*, sovereignty, a kingdom.
rego, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, direct, control, rule.
relātus, *part. of* refero.
religio, -ōnis, *f.*, reverence, religion; *in plur.*, superstitious fancies, matters of religion.
relinquo, -ere, -līqui, -lictum, *v. a.*, leave behind, abandon; *in pass.*, remain.
reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* (relinquo), remaining, other; *in plur. as subst.*, *reliqui, ōrum, m.*, the others, the rest.
remaneo, -ēre, -mansi, *v. n.*, stay behind, remain behind.
remitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a. and n.*, send back, remit, relax.
rēno, -ōnis, *m.*, a reindeer skin.
repente, *adv.*, suddenly.
repentīnus, -a, -um (repens), *adj.*, sudden, unlooked-for.
reperio, -īre, repperi, repertum (re + pario), *v. a.*, find, meet with.
requīro, -ere, -sīvi -sītum, *v. a.*, demand, require.
rēs, rei, *f.*, thing, matter, fact, circumstance, interest; *rēs frumentāria*, corn supply.
resarcio, -īre, *no perf.*, -sartum, *v. a.*, patch again, repair.
rescindo, -ere, -scidi, -scissum, *v. a.*, break up.
resisto, -ere, -stiti, *v. n.*, oppose, withstand.
respondeo, -ēre, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, answer, reply.
responsum, -i, *n.*, answer.
rēs publica, rei publicae, *f.*, commonwealth, republic, State.
restituo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum (re + statuo), *v. a.*, set up again, restore.
retineo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum (re + teneo), *v. a.*, keep, maintain.
revertor, -i (*perf. from* reverto), *v. dep.*, turn back, return, retire.
rex, rēgis (rego), *m.*, king, chieftain.
rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank (*of a river*).

rogo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, to ask, request; *sacramento rogare*, to swear in, enlist.
rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, report, rumour.
rursus, *adv.*, in turn, again.

săcrāmentum, -i, *n.*, oath, oath of allegiance.
săcrificium, -i (sacer + facio), *n.*, sacrifice.
saepe, *adv.*, frequently, often.
saepenumerō, often.
saltus, -ūs, *m.*, defile, narrow valley, glade.
salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.
sancio, -īre, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, make sacred, hallow, ordain.
sanctus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sacred, holy.
satisfacio,-ere, -fēci, -factum, *v. n.*, satisfy, do one's duty to, make excuse.
satisfactio, -ōnis, *f.*, excuse, explanation, apology.
saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded.
scālae, -ārum, *f.*, ladder, scaling-ladder.
scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, wicked; *as noun*, a criminal.
scio, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *v. a.*, know.
scrībo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v.a.*, write.
sē, *or* sēsē, *acc.* (*gen.* sui, *dat.* sibi, *abl.* sē *or* sēse), *reflex. pron.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves; *inter se*, with each other, mutually.
sector, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, pursue, follow up.
sēcum = cum se.
secundus, -a, -um (sequor), *adj.*, next, second, favourable, successful.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sēdēs, -is (sedeo), *f.*, seat, abode, settlement.
seges, -getis, *f.*, corn-crop.
semper, *adv.*, always, ever.
senātus, -ūs (senex), *m.*, council of elders, Senate.
sententia, -ae (sentio), *f.*, opinion, sentence.
sentio, -īre, -si, -sum, *v. a.*, perceive, observe.
septem, *num. adj.*, seven.
septimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, seventh.
septingenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, seven hundred.
sequor, -i, secūtus sum, *v. dep.*, follow.
sermo, -ōnis (sero), *m.*, conversation.
sērō (serus), *adv.*, too late.
sero, -ere, sēvi, satum, *v. a.*, sow.
servīlis, -e (servus), *adj.*, belonging to a slave, slavish.
servitūs, -ūtis (servus), *f.*, slavery.
servo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.*, watch, keep, preserve.
servus, -i, *m.*, slave, serf.
seu, *conj.*, whether; *seu . . . seu*, whether . . . or.
sex, *num. adj.*, six.
sexāgintā, *num. adj.*, sixty.
sexcenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, six hundred.
sī, *conj.*, if.
sīc, *adv.*, so, thus.
siccitās, -ātis (siccus), *f.*, dryness, drought.

sīcut (sicuti), *adv.*, as, just as.
sīdus, -eris, *n.*, constellation.
significātio, -ōnis (signum + facio), *f.*, indication.
signum, -i, *n.*, military standard, ensign, a cohort.
silva, -ae, *f.*, wood, forest.
silvestris, -e (silva), *adj.*, wooded, woodland.
similis, -e, *adj.*, like.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time, at once.
simulācrum, -i (simulo), *n.*, image.
simulātio, -ōnis, *f.*, pretence, deceit.
sīn, *conj.*, but if.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
singulāris, -e (singuli), *adj.*, singular, remarkable.
singuli, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, one each, single.
sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the left hand, adverse.
sinistrorsus (sinistro + versus), *adv.*, to the left.
situs, -ūs, *m.*, position.
sīve, *conj.*, whether ; *sīve . . . sīve*, whether . . . or.
societās, -ātis, *f.*, alliance, league.
socius, -i, *m.*, ally.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun, Sun-god.
soleo, -ēre, -itus sum, *v. n. semi-dep.*, be accustomed, be wont.
sōlitūdo, -inis (solus), *f.*, desert, wilderness.
sollicito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, try to win over, incite, instigate, tamper with.
sōlum, *adv.*, alone, only.
sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only.
spatium, -i, *n.*, space, distance, interval.
speciēs, -ēi, *f.*, appearance, look ; *in speciem*, for a show.
spēro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, hope, expect.
spēs, spei, *f.*, hope, expectation.
sponte (spondeo), *abl. f.*, *used in the phrase*, *suā sponte*, of one's own accord.
statio, -ōnis, *f.*, outpost ; *in statione*, on guard.
statūra, -ae (sto), *f.*, height, size, stature.
status, -ūs (sto), *m.*, position, state.
stirps, -is, *f.*, stem, race.
sto, stāre, steti, statum, *v. n.*, stand, abide, adhere to.
strepitus, -ūs, *m.*, noise.
studeo, -ere, -ui, *v. n. with dat.*, study, devote oneself to, pay attention to.
studiōsē, *adv.*, eagerly, carefully.
studium, -i (studeo), *n.*, study, devotion to, zeal ; *studia rei militaris*, military pursuits.
sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*, under.
subeo, -īre, -ii, -itum, *v. n. and a.*, enter, undergo.
subicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, place beneath.
subiectus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lying near, adjacent.
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly.
sublātus, -a, -um, *part.*, *see* tollo.
sublevo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, support, lighten.

subruo, -ere, -ui, -utum, *v. a.*, undermine.

subsequor, -i, -cūtus sum, *v. dep.*, follow up.

subsidium, -i (sub + sedeo), *n.*, aid, reinforcement, support.

subsīdo, -ere, -sēdi, -sessum, *v. n.*, settle, remain.

subsisto, -ere, -stiti, *v. n.*, stand still, hold out.

subvenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *v. n.*, succour.

succēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (sub + cedo), *v. n. and a.*, take the place of, succeed.

succendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, set on fire.

suffrāgium, -i, *n.*, vote.

suggestus, -ūs, *m.*, platform.

sui, *see* sē *or* suus.

sum, esse, fui, *v.*, am.

summa, -ae, *f.*, the whole; *summa exercitus*, the main body of the army; *summa imperii*, the chief command; *in summā*, in general.

summoveo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *v. a.*, remove, repulse.

sūmo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v. a.*, take; *poenas sumere*, inflict punishment.

sumptuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, costly, expensive.

superior, -ius, *comp. of* superus.

supero, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (super), *v. a. and n.*, conquer, prevail, excel.

supersum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*, be over, be left, remain, survive.

superus, -a, -um, *adj.*, upper; *comp.* superior, -ius, upper, former, superior, victorious; *sup.* suprēmus *and* summus, highest, most important, supreme.

supplicium, -i, n., punishment, execution; *supplicium sumere*, to punish.

sŭprā, *prep. with acc. and adv.*, above, before.

suscipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a.*, undertake.

suspīcio, -ōnis, *f.*, distrust, suspicion.

suspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, suspect.

sustineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum (sub + teneo), *v. a.*, withstand, bear.

sustuli, *see* tollo.

suus, -a, -um, *poss. adj.*, his own, her own, its own, their own, his, her, its, their; *sui*, his *or* their countrymen, friends, agents, officers, &c., his *or* their soldiers.

tabernāculum, -i, *n.*, tent.

tabulātum, -i, *n.*, floor, story.

tālis, -e, *adj.*, of such a kind, such.

tam, *adv.*, so.

tamen, *adv.*, however, nevertheless, yet.

tametsī, *conj.*, notwithstanding that, although.

tango, -ere, tetigi, tactum, *v. a.*, touch.

tanto, by so much, *see* quanto.

tantum, *adv.*, so much, so greatly, so, so far.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great;

subst. *tantum*, *-i*, *n.*, so much, so small.
tardo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, retard, hinder.
taurus, -i, *m.*, bull.
taxus, -i, *f.*, yew-tree.
tegimentum, -i (tego), *n.*, covering.
tego, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, cover, shelter.
tēlum, -i, *n.*, javelin.
temerārius, -a, -um (temere), *adj.*, rash, inconsiderate.
temeritās, -ātis (temere), *f.*, rashness.
tempto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, endeavour, tempt, try to influence.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time, season.
tendo, -ere, tetendi, tentum *and* tensum, *v. a. and n.*, stretch, extend, be encamped.
teneo, -ēre, -ui, *v. a.*, hold, keep.
tenuis, -e, *adj.*, thin, weak, slight.
terra, -ae, *f.*, land, earth ; *pl.* terrae, the earth, world.
terreo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, frighten.
terror, -ōris, *m.*, fright, alarm.
tertius, -a, -um (ter), *num adj.*, third.
testimōnium, -i (testor), *n.*, evidence, proof.
timeo, -ēre, -ui, *v. a. and n.*, dread, fear.
timidus, -a, -um (timeo), *adj.*, frightened, timid.
timor, -ōris (timeo), *m.*, dread, fear.
tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublātum, *v. a.*, raise, elate, remove, destroy.
tormentum, -i (torqueo), *n.*, torture.
tot, *num. adj.*, so many.
tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, entire, all.
tractus, *part.*, *see* **traho.**
trādo, -ere, -didi, -ditum (trans + do), *v. a.*, hand over, deliver up, teach.
trādūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum (trans + duco), *v. a.*, lead across *or* over, transfer.
traho, -ere, traxi, tractum, *v. a.*, drag, draw.
trāicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum (trans + iacio), *v. a.*, pierce through, transfix.
trans, *prep. with acc.*, across, over, on the other side of.
transdūco, *see* **trādūco.**
transeo, -ire, -īvi *or* **-ii, -itum,** *v. n. and a.*, cross.
transfero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *v. a.*, carry over, transfer.
transfīgo, -ere, -xi, -xum, *v. a.*, pierce through, transfix.
transitus, -ūs (trans + eo), *m.*, passage, crossing.
translātus, -a, -um, *part. of* transfero.
transmarīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, from beyond sea, imported.
Transrhēnāni, -ōrum, *m.*, those living beyond the Rhine.
trecenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, three hundred.
trepido, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. n.*, hurry about in alarm ; (*impersonal*) *trepidatur* = all is confusion.
trēs, tria, *num. adj.*, three.
tribūnus, -i, *m.*, tribune (*see* Introd., p. 13).

tribuo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a.*, concede, assign.
tribūtum, -i (tribuo), *n.*, tribute.
trīgintā, *num. adj.*, thirty.
tripertītō (tres + pars), *adv.*, in three divisions.
tū, tui, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.
tueor, -ēri, tuitus sum, *v. dep.*, watch, defend, protect.
tum, *adv.*, then.
tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, uproar, confusion, disturbance, rebellion.
tumulus, -i (tumeo), *m.*, mound, rising ground.
turma, -ae, *f.*, squadron.
turpis, -e, *adj.*, base, shameful, dishonourable.
turris, -is, *f.*, tower.
tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, safe.

ubĭ, *conj.*, where, when.
ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, *v. dep.*, avenge oneself on, avenge.
ullus, -a, -um, *adj.*, any.
ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, farther.
ultimus, -a, -um, *sup. adj.*, farthest, most distant.
ultrō, *adv.*, unasked, unprovoked, voluntarily.
ultus, *part. of* ulciscor.
ūnā, *adv.*, together, in company.
unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence.
undique, *adv.*, from all sides, on every side.
ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, all, whole.
ūnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, one, alone; *ad unum*, to a man, *i. e.* without exception.

urbs, -is, *f.*, city.
ūrus, -i, *m.*, the aurochs.
usque, *adv.*, all the way; *usque ad*, right up to; *usque eo*, to such a degree.
ūsus, -ūs (utor), *m.*, use, occasion, experience, practice, training; *ex ūsu esse*, to be useful.
ūsus, -a, -um, *part. of* ūtor.
ut (utī), *conj. with ind.*, when, as; *with subj.*, so that, (in order) that.
uter, utra, utrum, *pron.*, which (*of the two*).
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*, both, each (*of two*).
utī, *conj.*, *see* ut *or* ūtor.
ūtor, -i, ūsus sum, *v. dep.*, use, enjoy, employ.
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

vacātio, -ōnis (vaco), *f.*, freedom, exemption.
vagor, -āri, -ātus sum (vagus), *v. dep.*, wander, straggle.
valeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *v. n.*, be strong, have power, avail; *multum valēre*, to be of great service; *minus valēre*, to be less powerful.
vallēs *and* vallis, -is, *f.*, valley.
vallum, -i, *n.*, rampart.
varietās, -ātis, *f.*, diversity, variety.
vasto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (vastus), *v. a.*, empty, lay waste.
velim, *pres. subj. of* volo.
velle, *pres. inf. of* volo.
vēlōcitās, -ātis (velox), *f.*, speed, swiftness.
vēnātio, -ōnis (venor), *f.*, hunting, the chase.

vēnātor, -ōris (venor), *m.*, hunter.
venia, -ae, *f.*, pardon, favour, indulgence.
venio, -īre, vēni, ventum, *v. n.*, come.
ventus, -i, *m.*, wind.
vēr, vēris, *n.*, spring.
verbum, -i, *n.*, word.
vereor, -ēri, -itus sum, *v. dep.*, fear.
vērō (verus), *adv.*, in truth, however, but.
versor, -āri, -ātus sum, *v. dep.*, be busy, engaged in, involved in, stay.
versus, -ūs, *m.*, verse.
versus, *prep.*, towards, in the direction of.
vesper, -eri *and* -eris, *m.*, evening.
vestīgium, -i, *n.*, footprint, track, trace.
veto, -āre, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, forbid.
vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old.
vexillum, -i, *n.* flag.
vexo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, lay waste, ravage.
via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, journey.
vīcēnī, -ae, -a (viginti), *num. adj.*, twenty each.
vīcēsimus, -a, -um (viginti), *num. adj.*, the twentieth.
vīcīnitās, -atis (vicinus), *f.*, proximity, the neighbourhood.
vīcīnus, -a, -um., *adj.*, neighbouring; *as noun*, a neighbour.
victima, -ae, *f.*, victim.
victor, -ōris (vinco), *m.*, conqueror.
victus, -ūs (vivo), *m.*, provisions, sustenance.
vīcus, -i, *m.*, village.
video, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *v. a.*, see; *in pass.*, be seen, appear, seem; *impers. pass.*, seem, seem fit *or* good.
vīgintī, *num. adj.*, twenty.
vīmen, -inis, *n.*, twig, osier.
vinco, -ere, vīci, victum, *v. a. and n.*, conquer, surpass.
violo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (vis), *v. a.*, do violence to, injure.
vir, viri, *m.*, man, husband.
vīrēs, *see* vis.
virtūs, -ūtis (vir), *f.*, manliness, valour, bravery, courage, virtue, worth.
vīs, *acc.* vim, *abl.* vi, strength, force, violence; *pl.*, virēs, vīrium, vīribus, strength, forces.
vīta, -ae (vivo), *f.*, life.
vīto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, avoid, evade.
vīvo, -ere, vixi, victum, *v. n.*, live.
vīvus, -a, -um (vivo), *adj.*, alive, living.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely.
voco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v. a.*, call, invite, challenge.
volo, velle, volui, *v. a.*, wish, will.
voluntās, -ātis, *f.*, will, disposition, consent.
voluptās, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure.
voveo, -ēre, -vōvi, vōtum, *v. a. and n.*, vow, promise.
vox, vōcis, *f.*, word, voice, cry.
vulgō (vulgus), *adv.*, commonly, generally.
vulgus, -i, *n. and m.*, the (*common*) people, the public.
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.

MESSRS. BELL'S CATALOGUE

OF

CLASSICAL BOOKS

Bell's Illustrated Classics—
- Elementary Series
- Elementary Illustrated Texts
- Intermediate Series

Bell's Latin and Greek Class Books
Cambridge Texts, with Notes
Cambridge Greek and Latin Texts
Cambridge School Classics
Public School Series
Bibliotheca Classica
Other Critical Editions and Texts
Latin and Greek Class Books

LONDON
GEORGE BELL & SONS, YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN
CAMBRIDGE: DEIGHTON, BELL & CO.
1900

BELL'S ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS.

EDITED BY E. C. MARCHANT, M.A.,

CLASSICAL MASTER AT ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL.

A New Series of Annotated Classics for the Lower and Middle Forms of Schools.

THE special object of the Series is to make the editions as interesting and helpful as possible to the intelligent learner; and with this end in view, in addition to the usual apparatus of Introduction, Notes, and Vocabularies, ILLUSTRATIONS drawn from authentic sources have been introduced wherever it has been thought that they might help to elucidate the text. Numerous MAPS and PLANS are also given.

Elementary Series.

The volumes are issued **with** or **without** VOCABULARIES to suit the requirements of different schools. Pott 8vo, price 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

CORNELIUS NEPOS. Epaminondas, Hannibal, Cato. By H. L. EARL, M.A., Grammar School, Manchester.

EUTROPIUS. Books I and II (1 vol.). By J. G. SPENCER, B.A., St. Paul's Preparatory School.

PHAEDRUS. A Selection. By REV. R. H. CHAMBERS, M.A., Head Master of Christ's College, Brecon.

STORIES OF GREAT MEN. By REV. F. CONWAY, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School.

Elementary Series (*continued*).

CAESAR. Book I. By A. C. LIDDELL, M.A., High School, Nottingham.

— Book II. By A. C. LIDDELL, M.A.

— Book III. By F. H. COLSON, M.A., Head Master of Plymouth College, and G. M. GWYTHER, M.A., Assistant Master.

— Book IV. By REV. A. W. UPCOTT, M.A., Head Master of St. Edmund's School, Canterbury.

— Book V. By A. REYNOLDS, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School.

— Book VI. By J. T. PHILLIPSON, M.A., Head Master of Christ's College, Finchley.

CICERO. Speeches against Catiline. I and II (1 vol.). By F. HERRING, M.A., Blundell's School, Tiverton. [*In the Press.*

—**Selections.** By J. F. CHARLES, B.A., City of London School. [*In the Press.*

HORACE'S ODES. Book I. By C. G. BOTTING, B.A., St. Paul's School.

— Book II. By C. G. BOTTING, B.A. [*Preparing.*

— Book III. By H. LATTER, M.A., Cheltenham College. [*Preparing.*

LIVY. Book IX, cc. i-xix. By W. C. FLAMSTEAD WALTERS, M.A., Lecturer in Classics at University College, Cardiff.

— **Hannibal's First Campaign in Italy.** (Selected from Book XXI.) By F. E. A. TRAYES, M.A., St. Paul's School.

OVID'S METAMORPHOSES. Book I. By G. H. WELLS, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School.

— **Selection from the Metamorphoses.** By J. W. E. PEARCE, M.A., University College School, London.

—**Elegiac Selections.** By F. COVERLEY SMITH, B.A., High School, Nottingham. [*Preparing.*

— **Tristia.** Book III. By H. R. WOOLRYCH, M.A., Head Master of Blackheath School. [*In the Press.*

VIRGIL'S AENEID. Book I. By REV. E. H. S. ESCOTT, M.A., Dulwich College.

— Book II. By L. D. WAINWRIGHT, M.A., St. Paul's School.

— Book III. By L. D. WAINWRIGHT, M.A.

— Book IV. By A. S. WARMAN, B.A., The Grammar School, Manchester.

— Book VI. By J. T. PHILLIPSON, M.A. [*Preparing.*

— **Selection from Books VII to XII.** By W. G. COAST, B.A., Fettes College. [*In the Press.*

EURIPIDES' ALCESTIS. By E. H. BLAKENEY, M.A., Head Master of the Grammar School, Sandwich. [*Preparing.*

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS. Book I. By E. C. MARCHANT, M.A. [*Preparing.*

Some Opinions of Schoolmasters.

'I have always been strongly in favour of the employment of illustration to assist the study of the classics. I am glad to see so definite an attempt to help us in this direction, and sincerely hope it will prove a success.'—Rev. Dr. FIELD, *Radley*.

'I have always believed in illustration wherever it is possible, and feel sure that these "Illustrated Classics" will be very useful.'—Rev. L. S. MILFORD, *Haileybury College*.

'The illustrations seem to me good, and useful for rousing interest and increasing appreciation of the subject-matter. I have often in teaching wanted just such illustrations.'—Rev. Dr. WILSON, *Lancing College*.

'Distinctly good of their kind. I shall consider their introduction favourably when opportunity offers.'—Rev. H. B. GRAY, *Bradfield College*.

'Your "Illustrated Classics" seem to me excellent. I have already introduced the "Caesar," and hope to use others.'—Rev. R. COLLEY, *Stonyhurst College*, *Blackburn*.

'I am very favourably impressed with the "Illustrated Classics" that you have sent me. In every respect they seem admirably suited for use in the lower Form of schools. I shall hope to make use of them in our school.'—C. G. PRUEN, *Cheltenham College*.

'The illustrations and the clear type are excellent features.'—J. H. FOWLER, *Clifton College*.

'Your "Illustrated Classics" are excellent and wonderfully cheap. We shall use them.'—Rev. W. CAMPBELL PENNEY, *Elizabeth College*, *Guernsey*.

'They are admirable little books and make one envy the rising generation of classical students.'—The PRESIDENT, *St. Edward's College*, *Liverpool*.

'The idea seems likely to give a human interest to the classical authors read in Junior Forms, and must assist the imagination to realize what they describe.'—Rev. F. W. HAWES, *King's School*, *Ely*.

'They will be interesting to boys, and enable them to realize what they read. The notes seem very satisfactory.'—ROBERT BRODIE, *Whitgift Grammar School*, *Croydon*.

'I like them very much indeed, and think they will be a great help towards an intelligent understanding of the books. The introductions and notes are excellent, and the illustrations add greatly to the interest of the stories.'—E. HARTLEY, *Merchant Taylors' School*, *Crosby*, *Liverpool*.

'I think your "Illustrated Classics" will be very useful, and likely to predispose young boys favourably to the subject, or at least to counteract in an appreciable degree the antipathy which the classical master has in many cases to combat.'—Rev. W. H. ISAACS, *Dean Close School*, *Cheltenham*.

'It is impossible not to think most favourably of your "Illustrated Classics."'—W. WILKINS, *The High School*, *Dublin*.

Elementary Illustrated Texts.

The Texts of the foregoing Series are issued with Vocabularies (but without Notes). Limp cloth, cut flush, 1s. each.

Intermediate Series.

With numerous Illustrations and Maps. Small crown 8vo.

CAESAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN IN GAUL, B.C. 52. **De Bello Gallico.** Lib. VII. Edited, with Notes, Excursus, and Tables of Idioms, by the Rev. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. Third Edition. *2s. 6d. net.*

The following are in active preparation:—

THE ATHENIANS IN SICILY. Being portions of Thucydides, Books VI and VII. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by the REV. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College.

HOMER'S ODYSSEY. Book XI. Edited by E. C. MARCHANT, M.A., Classical Master of St. Paul's School.

SOPHOCLES' ANTIGONE. Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School.

LIVY. Book XXI. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by F. E. A. TRAYES, M.A., St. Paul's School.

Bell's Illustrated Latin Readers.

Edited by E. C. MARCHANT, M.A.

I. **SCALAE PRIMAE. A Selection of Simple Stories for Translation into English.** With Vocabulary. By J. G. SPENCER, B.A. Pott 8vo, *1s.*

II. **SCALAE MEDIAE. Short Extracts from Eutropius and Caesar, Graduated in Difficulty.** With Vocabulary. By PERCY A. UNDERHILL, M.A. Pott 8vo, *1s.*

III. **SCALAE TERTIAE. Selections in Prose and Verse from Caesar, Nepos, Phaedrus, and Ovid, Graduated in Difficulty.** With Vocabulary. By PERCY A. UNDERHILL, M.A. [*Preparing.*

After using these Readers the learner is recommended to use Bell's Illustrated Elementary Series.

FIRST EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE. By E. A. WELLS, M.A., Highfield School, Southampton. Pott 8vo, with Vocabulary, *1s.*

TALES FOR LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By G. H. WELLS, M.A., Assistant Master at Merchant Taylors' School.

Cambridge Texts, with Notes.

Price 1s. 6d. each, with exceptions.

AESCHYLUS. 6 vols. **Prometheus Vinctus—Septem contra Thebas—Agamemnon—Persae—Eumenides—Choephoroe.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D.. late Classical Examiner to the University of London.

CICERO. 3 vols. **De Amicitia—De Senectute—Epistolae Selectae.** By GEORGE LONG, M.A.

EURIPIDES. 13 vols. **Alcestis—Medea—Hippolytus—Hecuba—Bacchae—Ion** (2s.)—**Orestes—Phoenissae—Troades—Hercules Furens—Andromache—Iphigenia in Tauris—Supplices.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D.

HOMER. **Iliad,** Book I. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. (1s.)

OVID'S Fasti. 3 vols. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2s. each. Books I and II—Books III and IV—Books V and VI.

OVID. Selections from the Amores, Tristia, Heroides, and Metamorphoses. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A.

SOPHOCLES. 5 vols. **Oedipus Tyrannus—Oedipus Coloneus—Antigone—Electra—Ajax.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D.

TERENCE. 4 vols. **Andria—Hauton Timorumenos—Phormio—Adelphoe.** By Prof. WAGNER.

VIRGIL'S WORKS. 12 vols. Abridged from Prof. CONINGTON'S Edition by Professors NETTLESHIP and WAGNER and Rev. J. G. SHEPPARD.

Bucolics—Georgics, I and II—**Georgics,** III and IV—**Aeneid,** I and II—**Aeneid,** III and IV—**Aeneid,** V and VI (2s.)—**Aeneid,** VII—**Aeneid,** VIII—**Aeneid,** IX—**Aeneid,** X—**Aeneid,** XI—**Aeneid,** XII.

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS. 6 vols. With Life, Itinerary, Index, and Three Maps. MACMICHAEL'S Edition, revised by J. E. MELHUISH, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. In separate Books.

Book I (with Life, Introduction, Itinerary, and Three Maps)—Books II and III—Book IV—Book V—Book VI—Book VII.

XENOPHON'S HELLENICA. Book I and Book II. By the Rev. L. D. DOWDALL, M.A., Trinity College, Dublin, B.D., Christ Church, Oxon. 2s. each.

Cambridge Texts.

Just added. Three Vols. 2s. each.

P. OVIDI NASONIS OPERA, ex Corpore Poetarum Latinorum, a JOHANNE PERCIVAL POSTGATE Edito, separatim Typis Impressa.

Tom. I—**Heroides.** Recognovit A. PALMER.—**Amores.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.—**Medicamina Faciei Femineae.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.—**Ars Amatoria.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.—**Remedia Amoris.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.

Tom. II—**Metamorphoses.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.

Tom. III—**Fasti.** Recognovit G. A. DAVIES.—**Tristia.** Recognovit S. G. OWEN.—**Epistolae ex Ponto.** Recognovit S. G. OWEN.—**Halieutica.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.—**Ibis.** Recognovit A. E. HOUSMAN.—**Fragmenta.** Recognovit J. P. POSTGATE.

'Ovid has never been presented in a more attractive form. It will be an immense relief to schoolmasters, who form the class of society most directly interested in Ovid, to possess a text in handy form on which they can absolutely rely.'—*Cambridge Review.*

AESCHYLUS. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2*s.*

CAESAR, De Bello Gallico. By G. LONG, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

CICERO, De Senectute et De Amicitia et Epistolae Selectae. By G. LONG, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

CICERONIS Orationes in Verrem. By G. LONG, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

EURIPIDES. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 3 vols. 2*s.* each.

HERODOTUS. By J. W. BLAKESLEY, B.D. 2 vols. 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

HOMERI ILIAS. Lib. I–XII. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 1*s.* 6*d.*

HORATIUS. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

JUVENALIS ET PERSIUS. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

LUCRETIUS. By H. A. J. MUNRO, M.A. 2*s.*

SALLUSTI Catilina et Jugurtha. By G. LONG, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

SOPHOCLES. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*

TERENTIUS. By W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 2*s.*

THUCYDIDES. By J. W. DONALDSON, B.D. 2 vols. 2*s.* each.

VERGILIUS. By J. CONINGTON, M.A. 2*s.*

XENOPHONTIS Expeditio Cyri. By J. F. MACMICHAEL, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

NOVUM TESTAMENTUM Graece, Textus Stephanici, 1550. Accedunt variae lectiones editionum Bezae, Elzeviri, Lachmanni, Tischendorfii, Tregellesii. Curante F. H. SCRIVENER, M.A. New Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Editio Major. Containing the readings approved by Bishop Westcott and Dr. Hort, and those adopted by the Revisers. Also the Eusebian Canons and the Capitula and additional references. Sm. post 8vo, 7*s.* 6*d.* An Edition with wide margins. Half-bound, 12*s.*

Cambridge School Classics.

Foolscap 8vo.

CAESAR. De Bello Gallico. With English Notes for Junior Classes. By G. LONG, M.A. Books I–III, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books IV, V, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books VI, VII, 1*s.* 6*d.*

CATULLUS, TIBULLUS, and PROPERTIUS. Selected Poems. By the Rev. A. H. WRATISLAW and F. N. SUTTON, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

CICERO. De Senectute, De Amicitia, and Select Epistles. By G. LONG, M.A. New Edition. 3*s.*

CORNELIUS NEPOS. By the late J. F. MACMICHAEL, M.A. 2*s.*

HOMER. Iliad. Books I–XII. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 4*s.* Books I–VI, 2*s.* 6*d.* Books VII–XII, 2*s.* 6*d.*

HORACE. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. With a short Life. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or, Part I, **Odes**, 2*s.*; Part II, **Satires and Epistles**, 2*s.*

JUVENAL. Sixteen Satires (expurgated). By HERMAN PRIOR, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

MARTIAL. Select Epigrams. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D., and the late W. H. STONE. With a Life of the Poet. 4*s.* 6*d.*

OVID. The Six Books of the Fasti. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. New Edition, 3*s.* 6*d.* Or Books I and II, 1*s.* 6*d.*; Books III and IV, 1*s.* 6*d.*; Books V and VI, 1*s.* 6*d.*

SALLUST. Catilina and Jugurtha. With a Life. By G. LONG, M.A., and J. G. FRAZER, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or, separately, 2*s.* each.

TACITUS. Germania and Agricola. By P. FROST, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

VIRGIL. Bucolics, Georgics, and Aeneid, Books I–IV. By J. G. SHEPPARD, D.C.L. Abridged from Conington's Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Aeneid,** Books V–XII. Abridged from Conington's Edition, by H. NETTLESHIP, M.A., Professor of Latin in the University of Oxford, and W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 4*s.* 6*d.* Or in nine separate volumes, price 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

XENOPHON. The Anabasis. With Life, Itinerary, Index, and Three Maps. By the late J. F. MACMICHAEL. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or in four separate volumes, price 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

—— **The Cyropaedia.** By G. M. GORHAM, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* Books I and II, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books V and VI, 1*s.* 6*d.*

—— **The Memorabilia.** By P. FROST, M.A. 3*s.*

Public School Series.

Crown 8vo.

ARISTOPHANES. Peace. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A. *2s. 6d.*
— **Acharnians.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*
— **Frogs.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*
— **Plutus.** Edited by M. T. QUINN, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

CICERO. Letters to Atticus. Book I. Edited by A. PRETOR, M.A. 3rd Edition. *4s. 6d.*

DEMOSTHENES. The Oration against the Law of Leptines. Edited by B. W. BEATSON, M.A. 3rd Edition. *3s. 6d.*

DEMOSTHENES. De Falsa Legatione. Edited by the late R. SHILLETO, M.A. 8th Edition. *6s.*

LIVY. Book VI. Edited by E. S. WEYMOUTH, M.A., and G. F. HAMILTON, B.A. *2s. 6d.*
— Book XXI. Edited by Rev. L. D. DOWDALL, M.A., B.D. *2s.*
— Book XXII. Edited by Rev. L. D. DOWDALL. *2s.*

PLATO. Protagoras. Edited by W. WAYTE, M.A. 7th Edit. *4s. 6d.*
— **The Apology of Socrates and Crito.** 12th Edition. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. *2s. 6d.*
— **Phaedo.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 13th Edition. *5s. 6d.*
— **Gorgias.** Edited by the late W. H. THOMPSON, D.D. *6s.*
— **Euthyphro.** Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. 3rd Edition. *3s.*
— **Euthydemus.** Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. *4s.*
— **The Republic.** Books I and II. Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. 4th Edition. *5s.*

PLAUTUS. Menaechmei. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 3rd Edition. *4s. 6d.*
— **Trinummus.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 6th Edition. *4s. 6d.*
— **Aulularia.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 5th Edition. *4s. 6d.*
— **Mostellaria.** Edited by Professor E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, M.A. *5s.*

SOPHOCLES. The Trachiniae. Edited by A. PRETOR, M.A. *4s. 6d.*
— **The Oedipus Tyrannus.** Edited by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. *2s. 6d.*

TERENCE. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. Third Edition. *7s. 6d.*

THUCYDIDES. Book VI. Edited by T. W. DOUGAN, M.A. *2s.*

Bibliotheca Classica.

8vo.

Edited under the direction of the late George Long, M.A., and the late Rev. A. J. Macleane, M.A.

AESCHYLUS. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Fourth Edition. 8*s.*

CICERO'S ORATIONS. Edited by G. LONG, M.A. 4 vols. Vols. I and II, 8*s.* each. Vols. III and IV, *out of Print.*

DEMOSTHENES. Edited by R. WHISTON, M.A. 2 vols. 16*s.*

EURIPIDES. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition, revised. 3 vols. Vol. I *out of Print.* Vols. II and III, 8*s.* each.

HERODOTUS. Edited by J. W. BLAKESLEY, B.D. 2 vols. 12*s.*

HESIOD. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition. 5*s.*

HOMER. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2 vols. 14*s.*

HORACE. Edited by the late A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. Fourth Edition, by G. LONG. 8*s.*

PLATO. Phaedrus. Edited by W. H. THOMPSON, D.D. 5*s.*

SOPHOCLES. Vol. I. **Oedipus Tyrannus—Oedipus Coloneus—Antigone.** Edited by Rev. F. H. BLAYDES, M.A. 8*s.*

—— Vol. II. **Philoctetes—Electra—Trachiniae—Ajax.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 6*s.*

VERGIL. Edited by Prof. CONINGTON and Prof. NETTLESHIP. 3 vols. Vol. I, Fifth Edition, revised by F. HAVERFIELD, M.A. Vol. II, Fourth Edition. Vol. III. Third Edition. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

AN ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. 24 Maps, by W. HUGHES and GEORGE LONG, M.A. 6*s.*

Other Critical Editions and Texts.

AETNA. Revised, emended, and explained by the late H. A. J. MUNRO, M.A., Litt.D. Demy 8vo, 3*s*. 6*d*.

ARISTOPHANES' COMEDIES. By H. A. HOLDEN, LL.D. Demy 8vo. Vol. I, Text and Notes. 18*s*. Vol. II, Indices. 5*s*. 6*d*. The plays sold separately.

CALPURNIUS SICULUS AND M. AURELIUS OLYMPIUS NEMESIANUS. The Eclogues. Edited by CHARLES HAINES KEENE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6*s*.

CATULLUS. Edited by J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., Litt.D. Fcap. 8vo, 3*s*.

EURIPIDES, ELECTRA. Edited with Introduction and Notes by C. H. KEENE, M.A. Demy 8vo, 10*s*. 6*d*.

HYPERIDES, THE ORATIONS OF. Edited with Notes and a Translation by F. G. KENYON, M.A. 5*s*. *net*.

LIVY. The first five Books. PRENDEVILLE'S edition revised throughout and the notes in great part rewritten by J. H. FREESE, M.A. Books I, II, III, IV, V. With Maps and Introductions. 1*s*. 6*d*.

LUCAN. The Pharsalia. Edited by C. E. HASKINS, M.A. With an Introduction by W. E. HEITLAND, M.A. Demy 8vo, 14*s*.

LUCRETIUS. Titi Lucreti Cari de rerum natura libri sex. With Notes, Introduction, and Translation by the late H. A. J. MUNRO. Fourth Edition finally Revised. 3 vols. 8vo. Vols. I and II, Introduction, Text and Notes, 18*s*. Vol. III, Translation, 6*s*.

OVID. P. Ovidii Nasonis Heroides XIV. Edited by ARTHUR PALMER, M.A. Demy 8vo, 6*s*.

—— **P. Ovidii Nasonis Ars Amatoria et Amores**. A School Edition, carefully revised and edited, with some Literary Notes, by the Rev. J. H. WILLIAMS, M.A. Fcap. 8vo, 3*s*. 6*d*.

—— **The Metamorphoses.** Book XIII. With Introduction and Notes by C. H. KEENE, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

—— **The Metamorphoses**. Book XIV. With Introduction and Notes by C. H. KEENE, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

*** Books XIII and XIV together. 3*s*. 6*d*.

—— **P. Ovidii Nasonis Epistolarum ex Ponto Liber Primus.** With Introduction and Notes. By C. H. KEENE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 3*s*.

Critical Editions (*continued*).

PLATO. The Proem to the Republic of Plato. Book I and Book II, chaps. 1–10. Edited, with elaborate Introduction, Critical Notes, and Commentary, by T. G. TUCKER, Litt.D. (Cambridge), Hon. Litt. D. (Dublin), Professor of Classical Philology in the University of Melbourne, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*In the Press.*

PROPERTIUS. Sexti Propertii Carmina recognovit J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D. 4to, 3*s. net.*

—— **Sex. Aurelii Propertii Carmina.** The Elegies of Propertius, with English Notes. By the late F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, 5*s.*

—— **Sex. Propertii Elegiarum Libri IV.** Recensuit A. PALMER. 3*s.* 6*d.*

SOPHOCLES. The Oedipus Tyrannus of Sophocles. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Crown 8vo, 8*s.*

THEOCRITUS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by R. J. CHOLMELEY, M.A., City of London School. Crown 8vo. [*Preparing.*

THUCYDIDES. The History of the Peloponnesian War. With Notes and a Collation of the MSS. By the late R. SHILLETO, M.A. Book I. 8vo, 6*s.* 6*d.* Book II. 5*s.* 6*d.*

CORPUS POETARUM LATINORUM, a se aliisque denuo recognitorum et brevi lectionum varietate instructorum, edidit JOHANNES PERCIVAL POSTGATE, Litt.D. Tom. I quo continentur Ennius, Lucretius, Catullus, Horatius, Vergilius, Tibullus, Propertius, Ovidius. Large post 4to, 21*s.* net. Or in Two Parts, sewed, 9*s.* each *net.*

—— Part III, containing Gratius, Manilius, Phaedrus, Aetna, Persius, Lucanus, and Valerius Flaccus. 9*s.* net.

*** To be completed in Two Volumes.

CORPUS POETARUM LATINORUM. Edited by WALKER. 1 thick vol. 8vo. Cloth, 18*s.*

Containing :—Catullus, Lucretius, Virgilius, Tibullus, Propertius, Ovidius, Horatius, Phaedrus, Lucanus, Persius, Juvenalis, Martialis, Sulpicia, Statius, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Calpurnius, Siculus, Ausonius, and Claudianus.

Latin and Greek Class Books.

BAIRD. Greek Verbs. A Catalogue of Verbs, Irregular and Defective; their leading formations, tenses in use, and dialectic inflexions, with a copious Appendix, containing Paradigms for conjugation, Rules for formation of tenses, &c., &c. By J. S. BAIRD, T.C.D. *2s. 6d.*

—— **Homeric Dialect;** its leading Forms and Peculiarities. New Edition, revised, by the Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head Master of Westminster School. *1s.*

BAKER. Latin Prose for London Students. By ARTHUR BAKER, M.A. Wide Fcap. 8vo, *2s.*

BARRY. Notes on Greek Accents. By the Right Rev. A. BARRY, D.D. New Edition, rewritten. *1s.*

BECKWITH. Satura Grammatica. A Collection of Latin Critical Notes and Hints for Army Students. By E. G. A. BECKWITH, B.A., Trinity College, Stratford-on-Avon. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

CHURCH. Latin Prose Lessons. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., Professor of Latin at University College, London. Ninth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

CLAPIN. Latin Primer. By the Rev. A. C. CLAPIN, M.A. Fourth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *1s.*

COLERIDGE. Res Romanae, being brief Aids to the History, Geography, Literature and Antiquities of Ancient Rome for less advanced students. By E. P. COLERIDGE, B.A. With 3 Maps. Crown 8vo. Second Edition. *2s. 6d.*

—— **Res Graecae.** Being Aids to the study of the History, Geography, Archaeology, and Literature of Ancient Athens. With 5 Maps, 7 Plans, and 17 other Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

COLLINS. Latin Exercises and Grammar Papers. By T. COLLINS, M.A. Seventh Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

—— **Unseen Papers in Latin Prose and Verse.** Seventh Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

—— **Unseen Papers in Greek Prose and Verse.** Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *3s.*

—— **Easy Translations from Nepos, Caesar, Cicero, Livy, &c.** For Retranslation into Latin. With Notes. *2s.*

COMPTON. Rudiments of Attic Construction and Idiom. By the Rev. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. Crown 8vo. *3s.*

Latin and Greek Class Books (*continued*).

FROST. Eclogae Latinae; or, First Latin Reading Book. With Notes and Vocabulary by the late Rev. P. FROST, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 1*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Analecta Graeca Minora.** With Notes and Dictionary. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 2*s.*

—— **Materials for Latin Prose Composition.** By the late Rev. P. FROST, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 2*s.* Key, 4*s.* *net.*

—— **A Latin Verse Book.** New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 2*s.* Key, 5*s.* *net.*

HOLDEN. Foliorum Silvula. Part I. Passages for Translation into Latin Elegiac and Heroic Verse. By H. A. HOLDEN, LL.D. Twelfth Edition. Post 8vo, 7*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Foliorum Silvula.** Part II. Select Passages for Translation into Latin Lyric and Comic Iambic Verse. Third Edition. Post 8vo, 5*s.*

—— **Foliorum Centuriae.** Select Passages for Translation into Latin and Greek Prose. Tenth Edition. Post 8vo, 8*s.*

JEBB, JACKSON, and CURREY. Extracts for Translation into Greek, Latin, and English. By R. C. JEBB, M.P., Litt.D., LL.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge; H. JACKSON, Litt.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; and W. E. CURREY, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 2*s.* 6*d.*

MASON. Analytical Latin Exercises. By C. P. MASON, B.A. Fourth Edition. Part I, 1*s.* 6*d.* Part II, 2*s.* 6*d.*

—— **The Analysis of Sentences applied to Latin.** Post 8vo, 1*s.* 6*d.*

NETTLESHIP. Passages for Translation into Latin Prose. By H. NETTLESHIP, M.A., late Corpus Professor of Latin in the University of Oxford. Crown 8vo, 3*s.*

A KEY. Crown, 8vo, 4*s.* 6*d.* *net.*

NOTABILIA QUAEDAM: or the Principal Tenses of most of the Irregular Greek Verbs, and Elementary Greek, Latin, and French Constructions. New Edition. 1*s.*

PALEY. Greek Particles and their Combinations according to Attic usage. A short Treatise. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*

PENROSE. Latin Elegiac Verse, Easy Exercises in. By the Rev. J. PENROSE. New Edition. 12mo, 2*s.* Key, 3*s.* 6*d.* *net.*

Latin and Greek Class Books (*continued*).

PRESTON. Greek Verse Composition. By G. PRESTON, M.A. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo, 4*s*. 6*d*.

SEAGER. Faciliora. An Elementary Latin Book on a New Principle. By the Rev. J. L. SEAGER, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

THACKERAY. Anthologia Graeca. A Selection of Greek Poetry, with Notes. By F. ST. JOHN THACKERAY. Sixth Edition. 16mo, 4*s*. 6*d*.

—— **Anthologia Latina.** A Selection of Latin Poetry, from Naevius to Boëthius, with Notes. By Rev. F. ST. JOHN THACKERAY. Eighth Edition. 16mo, 4*s*. 6*d*.

—— **Hints and Cautions on Attic Greek Prose Composition.** Crown 8vo, 3*s*. 6*d*.

Books of Reference.

TEUFFEL'S HISTORY OF ROMAN LITERATURE. Fifth Edition, revised by Dr. SCHWABE, translated by Prof. G. C. W. WARR, M.A., King's College, London. Medium 8vo. Vol. I (The Republican Period), 15*s*. Vol. II (The Imperial Period), 15*s*.

DONALDSON'S THEATRE OF THE GREEKS. Tenth Edition. 5*s*.

KEIGHTLEY'S (T.) MYTHOLOGY OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ITALY. Fourth Edition, revised by L. SCHMITZ, Ph.D., LL.D. With Twelve Plates. 5*s*.

WEBSTER'S INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Medium 4to, 2,118 pp., 3,500 Illustrations. Prices: cloth, £1 11*s*. 6*d*.; half-calf, £2 2*s*.; half-russia, £2 5*s*.; calf, £2 8*s*.; also in two vols., cloth, £1 14*s*.

In addition to the Dictionary of Words, with their pronunciation, etymology, alternative spellings, and various meanings, illustrated by quotations and numerous woodcuts, there are several valuable appendices, comprising a Pronouncing Gazetteer of the World; Vocabularies of Scripture, Greek, Latin, and English Proper Names; a Dictionary of the noted Names of Fiction; a Brief History of the English Language; a Dictionary of Foreign Quotations, Words, Phrases, Proverbs, &c.; a Biographical Dictionary with 10,000 Names, &c.

Prospectuses, with Specimen Pages, on application.

OXFORD: HORACE HART, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY